George Griffin Stonestreet

290.

3/6

608. i. 18.
1-2

EK II

W. Herbert.
1771.

OBSERVATIONS

Hiſtorical Eſſay,

Lately Publiſhed by the ſame AUTHORS,

THE Regiſter of the Moſt Noble ORDER of the GARTER, from its Cover in Black Velvet, uſually called the Black Book; having Notes placed at the Bottom of the Page, with an Introduction. In Two Volumes, Folio, with ſeveral Copper Plates. Printed for James Woodman, Bookſeller, in Ruſſel-Street, Covent-Garden, 1752.

ERRATA.

PAGE 37. Line 17. read 1580. Introduction.
Page 74. Number LXXIX. inſtead of Coronation, read Creation. Appendix.

Lately Publiſhed by the ſame AUTHOR,

THE Regiſter of the *Moſt Noble* ORDER *of the* GARTER, from its Cover in *Black Velvet*, uſually called the *Black Book*; having Notes placed at the Bottom of the Page, with an Introduction. In Two Volumes, Folio, with ſeveral Copper Plates. Printed for *James Woodman*, Bookſeller, in *Ruſſel-Street*, *Covent-Garden*, 1725.

ERRATA.

PAGE 37. Line 17. read 1399. *Introduction.*
Page 74. Number LXXIX, *inſtead of* Coronation, *read* Creation. *Appendix.*

OBSERVATIONS

Introductory to an

Hiſtorical Eſſay,

UPON THE

KNIGHTHOOD

OF THE

B A T H.

By JOHN ANSTIS, Eſq;

Garter Principal King of Arms.

L O N D O N:

Printed for JAMES WOODMAN, in *Ruſſel-Street, Covent-Garden,* and Sold by J. ROBERTS in *Warwick-Lane,* 1725.

OBSERVATIONS

Introductory to an

Hiſtorical ESSAY,

UPON THE

KNIGHTHOOD

OF THE

BATH.

PRESENTED BY
MUSEUM
B.M.S.
BRITANNICUM
LADY BANKS.

By JOHN ANSTIS Eſq;

Garter Principal King of Arms.

LONDON:

Printed for JAMES WOODMAN, in Ruſſel-Street,
Covent-Garden, and Sold by J. ROBERTS in
Warwick-Lane, 1725.

S. S. Banks 1812.

OBSERVATIONS

Introductory to an

Hiſtorical Eſſay,

UPON THE

Knighthood of the BATH.

ON Occaſion of a late Report, that a new Creation of *Knights of the* BATH, is intended, Queſtions have been propoſed to me from ſeveral Perſons, both in private Converſation, and by Letters, as well concerning the Origin, the Antiquity, the Dignity of their Degree, as concerning the ancient and ſolemn Rites of conferring it; for the Satisfaction of ſuch Perſons, and in Anſwer to their reſpective Demands, who have been pleaſed to conſult me upon this Head, as ſuppoſing the Nature of my Office hath obliged me to make ſome more curious and particular Reſearches into the

different Ranks and Diſtinctions of Men in civil Life, I have here made ſome curſory Obſervations, which may be ſufficient, at preſent, to give a general Idea of this State of Knighthood, 'till I find a proper Opportunity for methodizing the Collections, which may be applied, towards compiling a regular, and more complete Hiſtory, upon the Subject.

I. In Anſwer to the firſt Inquiry, concerning the Origin of this Degree, it may be obſerved, that the End of all Inſtitutions in reſpect to Titles, or Offices of Honour, is to encourage and promote Vertue; *That* being the great Support and Security of civil Government. All wiſe and well regulated States, in the World, have ever been careful to reward ſuch Perſons, who have diſtinguiſhed themſelves by any vertuous Qualities, or Atchievements, with certain publick honorary Badges of Diſtinction. And as Vertue tends, in all Inſtances, and in every different Branch of it, to promote the publick Good, ſo different Orders, or Rules of a vertuous Conduct, have been aſſigned to Men, by Means of which, they might, in their ſeveral Stations, be rendered, at once, more uſeful, and ornamental to Society.

The more ſpecifick Rule to that *Degree* of Knighthood, which I am now conſidering, and wherein the proper Character of it, as contradiſtinguiſhed from other Orders, doth conſiſt, is comprehended in the

Reaſons

Reaſons of its Inſtitution, which I am going to recite. It may be queſtioned, indeed, whether there is any Rule extant, in any Order, that may not be reduced to one, or other of the excellent Ends, for which this Degree, in particular, of the *Bath* was inſtituted; *Ends* ſo great, ſo good, ſo pious, and comprehenſive, that they do not ſeem capable of receiving any Additional Improvement: For what can be ſaid to amplify, or illuſtrate the Deſign of an Inſtitution, after we are told, It "is for the Exaltation of the Holy "Chriſtian Religion; the Support of the Rights of "our Sovereigns; the Defence of their Realms; the "Advancement of Juſtice; the Protection of Virgins, "Widows, and Orphans; the Relief of the Op-"preſſed; and for demonſtrating the Affection of our "Monarchs towards the Eſtate of *Chevalrie*; to the "End, both their Subjects, and Foreigners may be "rewarded for heroick military Actions, and towards "exciting other Perſons to imitate ſuch Examples." So that in reſpect to the Origin of this Degree, in general, we may conclude, it to be founded, upon religious, upon moral, and political Conſiderations.

II. In Reference to the Antiquity of Knighthood of the *Bath*, I ſhall cite the Authority of [a] *Jean du Tillet*, who ſuppoſeth it to have been practiced by

---

[a] Recueil des Roys de *France*, leurs couronne, & maiſon *p.* 431.

the ancient *Franks*, with *that* of [b] Mr. *Camden* to the ſame Effect, who writes, that He obſerved nothing more ancient concerning this Dignity, than that it was in Uſe among the old *Franks*: Theſe were the Inhabitants of lower *Germany*, with whom, it is highly probable, the *Saxons*, who invaded *England*, had the ſame common Deſcent; and who, with other Cuſtoms, upon their Settlement here, introduced the ſame Method of Knighthood; *Du Tillet* farther remarks, theſe ancient *Franks*, when they conferred Knighthood, obſerved many ſolemn Rites; Before they performed Vigils, they *bathed*, to ſignify that ſuch, who were admitted to this Degree, ſhould be of a pure Mind, and of honeſt Intentions; Be willing to conflict with any Dangers, or Difficulties, in the Cauſe of Virtue; take Care both in their Words, and Actions, to follow the Maxims of Prudence; and on all Occaſions, religiouſly obſerve the Rules of Fidelity, and Honour. Which Rites and Conditions, according to his Teſtimony, ſtill continued to be practiſed in *England*; and from the Practice of them, Gentlemen were here denominated Knights of the *Bath*.

If it ſhould be then admitted, that the Title is of no greater Antiquity, in this Kingdom, than from the Reign of *Hen.* IV; or, that we have not any authentick Monument, before his Time, which ſpecifies a Degree

---

[b] *Britannia* p. 124. Ordines *Angliæ*.

of

of Knighthood, under that expreſs Appellation; yet this ought not to be conſidered, as any Argument, againſt the Antiquity of the Thing itſelf: For if the Ceremony of *Bathing* was formerly uſed, as it will preſently appear to have been, in creating Knights, though our Hiſtorians have omitted, on the Occaſion, to mention that Ceremony; yet all the real Ends of the Inſtitution were equally anſwered, and the Honour of it, as effectually conferred, as if Bathing had been expreſsly mentioned by ſuch Hiſtorians; it being uſual with the beſt hiſtorical Writers, under ſome general Character, or Action, to imply, or ſuppoſe Things, with which ſuch Character, or Action, was known to be conſtantly attended. For Inſtance, the Inauguration, or Coronation of the King, doth ſuppoſe, that all the other ſacred concomintant Rites of that Solemnity, were then fully and regularly performed, though they may not be diſtinctly enumerated; The Rule holds, with Reſpect to all inferior Adminiſtrations, whether in religious or civil Life. The Honours of the Peerage, for Example, to which any Perſon hath been advanced, were ever preſumed to be effectually conveyed, and the principal Rites, appropriated to the Conveyance of it, to be always performed, notwithſtanding ſpecifick Mention was was not made by Hiſtorians, concerning the Performance of every ſeparate Rite, in particular, then conſtantly uſed upon ſuch Inveſtitures.

It may be farther aſſigned, as a Reaſon, why Knights of the *Bath* had not that Appellation more early attributed to them by Hiſtorians, that it was the uſual Cuſtom, even in Records, and legal Courſes of Procedure, to denominate all Knights by that Addition ſolely, without deſcending to ſpecify the Order, or Degree of Knighthood, whereby they were reſpectively diſtinguiſhed, as I have particularly obſerved in Reference to [c] Knights of the *Garter*; who for ſeveral Reigns, ſucceſſively, after that moſt noble Inſtitution, were not yet ſtiled Knights of the *Garter*, in Patents from the Crown, or Inſtruments reſpecting their own private Affairs. But no one will therefore pretend to infer, in Contradiction to unqueſtionable Facts, that there were no Knights of the *Garter* antecedent to the Uſage of that Title.

Though the Denomination then was not uſed, yet if certain Ceremonies, peculiarly appropriated to this Degree, are mentioned by any former Hiſtorians or Records; Ceremonies, which had no relation to any other known Degree of Knighthood, we may juſtly conclude, this determinate Degree of Knighthood is thereby to be underſtood; as, particularly, from the Robes of Ruſſet, or brown Colour, the crimſon or ſcarlet Robe, the Vigils, the Bed, the Bed-ticking, the Matrace, the Canvas, the Sheets, the Oblation of

---

c *Introduct. to the* Regiſter of the Garter, *p.* 5.

the

the Sword upon the Altar, *&c.* For ſince it doth not appear, that the Crown, at the Times referred to, did give Furniture, or Habiliments of this Kind, to Knights-Batchelors made by the Stroke of the Sword, or Bannerets, *ſimply* as ſuch, or that they performed any of theſe Ceremonies; it undeniably follows, that Knights, to whom the like Furniture or Habiliments were given, and who actually went through all theſe Forms, are to be conſidered, as of a different Rule or Degree, both from Knights-Batchelors, and Knights-Bannerets.

Thus in a publick Creation of Knights, which was made by *Edward* the Firſt, *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* reports the ſeveral known Ceremonies and the Vigils uſed on that occaſion, without any recital of the Ceremony of *Bathing* in particular; yet in the [c] Record or Account of the Wardrobe, particularly referring to that Creation, there is an Article, wherein a diſtinct Charge is exhibited for Expences *ſolely* belonging to the *Bath*, to the Covering of it, and of the Bed, *&c.* And there is the ſame Reaſon to conclude, that at other Creations, the ſame Rites of *Bathing* were uſed; though it was not neceſſary to mention them, where the Reaſon of the Fact, and common Uſage ſuppoſed every thing done according to Form: But, in exhibiting a Bill of Expences, it is uſual, and neceſſary indeed, on ſome Accounts, to deſcend to particular Cir-

[c] Appendix, Numb. xii, xiii.

cumſtances,

cumſtances, which yet it would be improper for an Hiſtorian to be minute, and ſcrupulouſly Particular in relating. And even the Clerks of the Wardrobe itſelf do not always mention thoſe Particulars of the Covering of the *Bath*, and of the Bed, which yet are known to be implied, or tacitly comprehended in their Accounts: Even in the Reign of *Hen.* VII, a Roll exhibiting the Names and Arms of all the Knights created by him, only mentions in general, *Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Kyng*; *Knyghts made att the Coronacion off the Quene*; *Knyghts made att the Creacion of Prynce* Arthur; *Knyghts made att the Creacion off* Henry *Duc of* York; without deſcending to diſtinguiſh them, as Knights of the *Bath*; though theſe were certainly ſo; as will appear from the Inſtruments in the *Appendix*, taken from other Memoirs of that Reign.

This, I apprehended, might be conveniently premiſed, as introductory to what I am proceeding to cite from [f] Mr. *Camden*, who relates, "That as to the "Knights of the *Bath*, he had found nothing more "ancient, than that this Dignity was in uſe among "the old *Franks*, and that *Henry* the Fourth, King of "*England*, on the Day of his Coronation, in the "*Tower* of *London*, conferred the ſame upon Forty-ſix "Eſquires, who had watched all Night before, and

---

[f] Britannia, *p.* 124.

had

" had *bathed* themſelves; that he gave to every one " of them a green Side-coat reaching down to the Ancle, " ſtrait-ſleeved, and furred with Menever, and ha- " ving on the Left-ſhoulder two white ſilk Twiſts " hanging looſe, with Taſſels at them;" which Words, as far as they relate to *Henry* IV, are apparently taken from [g] *Froiſſart*'s Narrative of that Coronation. [h] Mr. *Selden* ſeems to have followed the Opinion of this learned Antiquary; for he writes, " that the " firſt expreſs Mention of the Knights of the *Bath*, " as of a diſtinct Order, is commonly attributed to " the Beginning of *Henry* the Fourth;" and he quotes the ſame Paſſage from *Froiſſart*, " that this King, at " his Coronation, made Forty-ſix Knights at the *Tower*, " who were *bathed*;" though he ſoon refers us to what he had ſaid in the other Parts of his Treatiſe, about *bathing*, in making Knights-Batchilers (as he terms them) by the Kings of *France* and *England*, long before the Reign of *Henry* IV. Others have pretended to diſcover a more early Riſe of this Dignity and Appellation, from a Statute in the 20th of *Richard* II, which in the old Prints was expreſſed in ſuch a Manner, as might at firſt View ſupport that Aſſertion; yet, upon conſulting the original Record more carefully, it

---

g Appendix, Numb. 34.
h *Titles of Honour*, p. 678.
i Thinn's *Advocate, and Anti-Advocate*, MS. penes me, G. 2. *p.* 246 *b.* Whitlock's *Reading on the Statute of Pluralities*, MS.

will be found, that the Word from whence the Miſtake hath ariſen is [k] *bannuz* baniſhed, not, as it hath been ſuppoſed, *baignees* bathed; and accordingly it is obſervable, that in the Act of the 11th of *Richard* II, whereby the Perſons mentioned in this Statute of the 20th Year, *Belknap*, *Holt*, and *Burgleigh*, three Judges, were baniſhed, they have only the bare Addition of Knights; though indeed the two latter of them were really Knights created by *Bathing*: For though this Act of 20 *Rich.* II, by reaſon of what hath been already remarked upon it, cannot be regularly produced to ſhew, that they were ſo created; yet the Fact is evident from another [l] Inſtrument of 7 *Rich.* II, the Authority of which cannot be diſputed.

There are good Grounds to ſuppoſe, that the Cuſtom of *Bathing* before Knights were formally conſtituted, was much more antient; and that *Bathing*, as previous to a Degree of Knighthood, and concomitant with the Vigils, had been introduced by the *Saxons*. We have indeed few Memorials of that Age relating to our Subject; however [m] *Malmsbury* informs us, that *Alfred* conferred on his Nephew *Athelſtan*, ſome De-

---

[k] Item noſtre Seigneur le Roi eſt aſſentuz, & ad grauntez de ſa grace eſpetiale par aſſent, & accord de toutz Seigneurs eſpirituelx & temporelx, & de toutz les Comones en ceſt Parlement a *Robert Bealknap*, *John Holt*, & *William de Burgh*, Chivalers bannuz, & demourantz en *Irland* q'ils reviendrent en *Engleterre*, &c. St. 20 R. 2. c. vii.

[l] Append. Numb. 29.

[m] Appendix, Numb. 1.

gree

gree of Knighthood; in which Action he gave him a crimſon Robe, which might not then be appropriated, but is now peculiarly appropriated to Knights of the *Bath*; and likewiſe a Sword, under the expreſs Denomination of a *Saxon* Sword; which Article, as it may intimate that Cuſtom of Knighting was introduced by the *Saxons*, and derived from them, ſo perhaps might be deſigned, as ſome ſpecial and ſtanding Memorial to preſerve the Remembrance of their Reſidence among us.

But *Ingulfus*, who lived at the Time of the Conqueſt (as it is uſually termed) of this Kingdom by the *Normans*, is very particular, concerning the Practice of conferring Knighthoods by his Countrymen the *Saxons*.

" It was the Cuſtom (" ſaith he) of the *Engliſh*, " before the *Norman* Invaſion, that he, who was to be " regularly admitted to the Degree of Knighthood, " ſhould, on the Eve of the Day before his Initiation " to that Degree, repair to ſome Biſhop, Abbot, Monk, " or Prieſt, and there, with all Humility and Com- " punction of Heart, confeſs all his Sins; and having " received Abſolution, ſhould continue the whole " Night in the Church, exerciſing the ſtrict Offices of " Piety, and a ſincere Humiliation; that in the Mor- " ning he ſhould hear Maſs, offer his Sword upon the

---

n Appendix, Numb. 2.

 " Altar,

" Altar, and, after the Goſpel, the officiating Prieſt " ſhould, with his Benediction, lay a Sword, ſacred to " that Uſe, upon this Knight's Neck, who then ha- " ving participated of the Holy Myſteries of the " Communion, was from that Time conſtituted and " reputed a compleat Knight: Of which Cuſtom (as " he proceeds) the *Normans* expreſſed an high Deteſ- " tation, as reputing Knighthood conferred in this " Manner, to be of a mean, degenerous, and ignoble " Creation."

Thus *Ingulfus* repreſents the Matter: But [o] Mr. *Camden* and [p] Sir *Henry Spelman* ſeem to be of Opinion, that the *Normans* did not really diſlike, or diſcontinue this Practice; becauſe *William Rufus*, Son of the Conqueror, was Knighted by Archbiſhop *Lanfrank*, and upon ſome other Accounts ſpecified by them, which it is not here neceſſary to mention.

I ſhall not diſſemble, that in the Paſſage cited from *Ingulfus*, he doth not uſe the Term *Bathing*; but this cannot be urged, upon any good Grounds, as a negative Argument, that *Bathing* therefore was not, at the Time of his Writing, uſed preparatory to the Vigils: For within the Space of eighteen Years after his Death, which happened in 1109, *Bathing*, as will appear from the Extract, that I am going to produce, is ſeparately, and expreſsly mentioned, not as a new

---

o Britan. *p.* 126.
p Diſſertatio de Milite in Reliquiis, *p.* 177.

Cuſtom

Cuſtom introduced, but as a common requiſite Article among other known and received Rites of conferring Knighthood.

" [9] *Geoffrey* the Son of *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, which " Earl was afterward King of *Jeruſalem*, being in the " fifteenth Year, the Flower of his Age, *Henry* the " Firſt, King of *England*, propoſed to give his only " Daughter in Marriage to him: Overtures were made " to that End by King *Henry* to *Fulk*, who promiſed, " that he would conform to the King's Pleaſure, and " Demands: Engagements were made, and ſolemnly " ratified on each Part, and all Obſtacles to the Exe- " cution of the Treaty ſeemed to be effectually remo- " ved: While the Negotiation was depending, the " King ſent a Meſſage to the Earl, requiring, that " his Son, who had not yet been initiated into any " military Degree, ſhould, at the approaching *Pente-* " *coſt*, come honourably attended to *Roan*; that he " might there receive his Arms in Form [that is, the " Dignity of Knighthood] with other young Gentle- " men of the ſame Age, and by that means partici- " pate in the Royal Feſtivities. The King found no " Difficulty on occaſion of this Demand; a juſt, and " reaſonable Requeſt is eaſily granted. *Geoffrey*, by " Command of his Father, upon the Proſpect of being " made Son-in-Law to a King, attended by five Lords

---

[9] Appendix, Numb. 3.

" and

" and a numerous Company of Knights came to
" *Roan:* The King, that he might the better diſco-
" ver his Temper and Capacity, propoſed ſeveral
" Queſtions to him, and conferred with him after
" a free, and familiar Manner; the whole Day was
" ſpent in Joy, and Triumph: Early the next Morn-
" ing a *Bath* was prepared, according to the Ceremo-
" nial when any Perſon is to receive Knighthood;
" then, after Bathing, he put on a linnen Shirt;
" over that a Veſtment embroidered with Gold, and
" upon it a Mantle of Purple or Scarlet, with a Pair
" of ſilken Stockings, and Slippers on whoſe Out-
" ſide golden Lyons were worked. The King's Son-in-
" Law being thus ſplendidly habited, an Horſe of the
" fineſt Shape was prepared, and a Coat of Male made
" of double Rings, and of ſuch a Temper as render-
" ed it impenetrable to any Lance; his Boots for his
" Legs were likewiſe of Mail duplicated in the like
" Manner, and his Spurs were made of Gold; his
" Shield, charged with golden Lyons, hung upon his
" Neck; upon his Head he wore an Helmet adorned
" and enriched with many precious Stones, which
" was alſo tempered in ſuch a Manner, that no Sword,
" or other Inſtrument of War, had Force ſufficient to
" pierce it, and then was put into his Hand a Lance
" of Aſh, armed at the Point with Iron of [b] *Poictiers.*
" In the Cloſe of the Ceremonial, they delivered to

[b] *See* Du Freſn Gloſſ. v. Ferrum Pictavienſe.

" him

" him a Sword which had long been in the King's Ar-
" mory, in embelliſhing which, one *Galan*, the moſt
" famous Engraver of that Time, had diſcovered great
" Art, and uſed much Induſtry. Our young Knight
" being thus armed, as a good Preſage of his future
" Gallantry, mounted his Horſe with great Agility.
" To conclude, that Day being peculiarly dedicated
" to the Honour of his Knighthood, and to uninter-
" rupted Mirth; martial Exerciſes, and Decorations
" of Feaſts, and Dreſs, were the whole Buſineſs and
" Entertainment of it. The Solemnity of the Initi-
" ation of this Knighthood continued ſucceſſively for
" ſeven Days."

Several Obſervations may be made upon this Hiſtory, towards illuſtrating the preſent Subject: It is remarkable, in the Firſt Place, that a King of the *Norman* Line, the Son of the Conqueror, yet obſerved *Bathing*, (which may be eſteemed appendent to the *Saxon* Cuſtom of Vigils) even when he was in his *Norman* Dominions beyond Sea: A Circumſtance, which may be improved, to ſhew the Improbability of *Ingulfus* his Opinion, concerning the Diſlike of the *Normans* to the Method uſed by the *Saxons*, in creating Knights: For it cannot be ſuppoſed, whatever political Reaſons might induce a Sovereign Prince to certain Acts of Compliance with his People, againſt his Inclination and Sentiments, while he reſided among them; yet, that in his foreign Dominions he would

chooſe to act after a Manner diſagreeable to his own Temper, and to that of his foreign Subjects.

II. This Creation of Knighthood, it may be farther obſerved, was, at the Time of ſolemnizing a Marriage; and the Degree of Knighthood of the *Bath* hath been ſince frequently conferred on the like Occaſions. This Ceremony was performed upon one of the higheſt Feſtivals of the Year, the Day of *Pentecoſt*; in the Choice of which, it is not improbable, King *Henry* was rather determined for doing ſuch an Act of Grace, ſince himſelf had been Knighted on that [r] Anniverſary in the Year 1084.

III. A conſiderable Number of young Gentlemen, by whom *Geoffrey* was attended, were [ſ] knighted with him; and, conformable to that Practice, the ſame Uſage hath been retained in ſubſequent Creations.

IV. It may very reaſonably be concluded, that in the free and familiar Converſation which the King had with this young Candidate, he might himſelf deſcend to inſtruct him in the Nature, and Duties of the Degree with which he was preparing to honour him;

---

r Mat. Paris, *p.* 11. Numb. 50.

ſ *Thus in Mr.* Selden's *Copy, in his* Titles of Honour, *p.* 640. Ejus vero conſodales qui cum eo militiæ ſuſcipiendæ munus expectabant, univerſi byſſo & purpura innovantur.

a Con-

a Conjecture, which may be more reaſonably made, as this King, having been himſelf a Man of uncommon Erudition, would naturally be a greater Encourager of Ingenuity and Arts: And it will be evident from Precedents hereafter cited, that we have had ſeveral Monarchs who did not think it below their Dignity, perſonally to inſtruct the Eſquires who were to receive this Honour of Knighthood from them.

V. There is a near Affinity obſervable between the Make of the Habits, as they are repreſented at that Time, and the Manner, and Ceremony of putting them on, with the Forms that are now uſed, in both Reſpects.

VI. And whereas an Horſe, we are here told, was preſented to the young Knight, it is well known, that in ſucceeding Times theſe Knights of the *Bath* were obliged to make Cavalcades with great State.

VII. Beſides theſe ſeveral Uſages, which might be derived from the *Saxons*, a Lance, a Coat of Mail, a Shield, an Helmet, *&c.* were delivered, which probably were according to the *Norman* Method of conferring Knighthood, by whom, according to the Cuſtoms of *France*, Tilts and Tournaments might be then practiſed, which yet were not introduced into this Realm till under the Reigns of the ſucceeding Kings.

VIII. In the Formularies of the Knighthood of the *Bath*, and in ſeveral Precedents cited in the *Appendix*, the Eldeſt and younger Sons of our Sovereigns, as well as other Candidates for this Honour, at their Coming to Court for the Reception of it, were only permitted to ſerve up the firſt Diſh to the King's Table; and had not the Privilege of ſitting down, until they had been actually made compleat Knights, according to the Rites of the Ceremonial: Which Cuſtom is plainly intimated, in this Hiſtory, by the Words, *Regalibus gaudiis intereſſet*; an Inſtitution of great Antiquity; for [t] *Paulus Diaconus*, who died in the Beginning of the ninth Century, in his Hiſtory of the *Lombards*, is very full and clear to this Purpoſe; "You "know, *ſaith he*, it is not cuſtomary, that even the "Son of the King, ſhould be permitted to ſit at Ta-"ble with him, except he hath firſt received Arms from "ſome foreign Prince." And ſo late, as in the [u] Interview of the Emperor *Charles* IV, with *Charles* V King of *France*, in 1378, the Dukes who were not Knights, had not the Privilege of ſitting at Supper with them, which was allowed to thoſe who had been dignified with that Honour.

The next Teſtimony will be taken from *John Saliſburienſis*, who lived to the Year 1182, and muſt be ad-

---

t l. 1. c. 23.

u Entreveus, &c. par *Godefroy*, p. 72.

mitted

mitted a competent Witneſs; becauſe, under the Pontificate of Pope *Adrian*, his, and our Countryman, he took a Journey, in his younger Years, to *Rome*, to viſit that Pope; and in his Journey (as it appears from his own Teſtimony) did himſelf receive the Honour of [x] Knighthood, from an Archdeacon, in *Italy*: He is indeed ſilent, as to the Articles of *Bathing* and Vigils, but mentions another Characteriſtick of this Knighthood, the Oblation of the Sword, as a [y] Form pre-required; and which, he writes, ſtill ſubſiſted in his Time. *Petrus Bleſenſis* was his Contemporary, and Scholar at *Paris*, and as he had the farther Advantage of living for ſome Time in the Court of *Henry* II, ſo it muſt be ſuppoſed he was ſufficiently qualified to judge of the Cuſtoms in that Court, eſpecially of ſuch, as were practiſed on the moſt publick, and ſignal Occaſions. He [z] obſerves, that, "formerly Knights obliged themſelves, by a military "Oath, to do true and faithful Service to the State; "never to fly in Battel, and always to prefer the Pub-"lick Good to the Safety and Preſervation of their own "Lives; and even, at this Time the Candidates receive "their Swords from the Altar; thereby interpretative-"ly, and as by a viſible Teſt of their Sincerity, de-"claring themſelves true and faithful Sons of the "Church; ready to maintain the Honour of the

x Append. Numb. 5. y Append. Numb. 4. z Append. Numb. 6.

" Prieſthood, to defend the Poor, to puniſh Injuſtice,
" and to aſſert the Liberties of their Country: But
" this Deſign is now notoriouſly and ſhamefully per-
" verted: they who are at preſent inveſted with Knight-
" hood, being Enemies to the profeſſors of Chriſtiani-
" ty, are the Men who invade and lay waſte the Patri-
" mony of the Church."

This *Petrus Bleſenſis*, whom we laſt quoted, died, as appears from a [a] Record, before the Twentieth of *May*, in the fourteenth Year of King *John*'s Reign; under which, we find Directions in the King's Wardrobe for providing [b] Habits of Scarlet, of green or brown Colour, with Breeches and Shirts, *Braccis & Camiſiis*, which agree exactly with the Formulary of creating Knights of the *Bath*; and alſo Bedding, Coverlets and Sheets, which were doubtleſs for the Service of thoſe who were to be *Bathed:* for no other proper, or indeed probable Occaſion can be aſſigned for them: And like Orders frequently occur for providing Beds and Coverlets in the [c] Reign immediately ſucceeding, and in that too of [d] *Edward* the Firſt. But, in this Reign, we have alſo a collateral Teſtimony to our Purpoſe from [e] *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, who, tho' he doth not, as we have already acknowledged, deſcend to ſpecify *Bathing*; yet, in the

---

a Claus. 14 Joh. *b* Append. Numb. 7, 8. *c* Append. Numb. 9.
d Append. Numb. 10, 11. *e* Append. Numb. 12.

Re-

Record *f* for providing Materials for theſe very Knights, whom he doth mention, the *Bath* is expreſsly mentioned. And, as ſeveral pertinent and uſeful Obſervations may, and will be made upon this Citation from the Monk of *Weſtminſter*, I thought it might be convenient to inſert a true and entire Copy of it.

" The King, to render his Expedition into *Scot-*
" *land* more ſplendid and numerous, cauſed Procla-
" mation to be made throughout *England*, whereby
" all Perſons entitled [compellable] to take Knight-
" hood by Right of Hereditary Succeſſion, that is,
" by Lands deſcended to them; or who had
" Eſtates ſufficient to ſupport that Degree, were re-
" quired, on the Feaſt of *Pentecoſt*, to attend at *Weſt-*
" *minſter*, where, every one of them ſhould receive ſe-
" verally, out of the King's Wardrobe, at the King's
" Expence, all Things belonging to the Habit of
" Knighthood, except what related to the Furniture
" of his Horſe [or Armour for ſuch Knight]. At
" the Time and Place appointed, there was an Appea-
" rance of Three-hundred young Gentlemen, Sons
" of Earls, Barons, and Knights, to whom was di-
" ſtributed in ample Meaſure, according to their dif-
" ferent Qualities, Purple, fine Linnen, Furrs, and
" Mantles embroidered with Gold: And becauſe the

f Appendix, Numb. xiii.

" Royal

" Royal Palace, though ſpacious, was not of Extent
" ſufficient to accommodate ſo great a Number, they
" repaired to the *New Temple*; where they erected
" Tents and Pavilions, having firſt cut down the
" Trees in the Orchat, and levelled the Walls of it,
" that they might ſeparately, and more commodiouſ-
" ly dreſs themſelves in their ſplendid Habits. That
" Night, as many of them performed their Vigils
" in the *Temple*-Church, as the Place would well
" contain: But the Prince of *Wales*, by Command
" of the King his Father, kept his Vigils in the Church
" of *Weſtminſter*, with ſome other Perſons of the firſt
" Dignity. There, the Noiſe of Trumpets and Pipes
" was ſo great, and the Acclamations of the People
" ſo loud and extended, that the Voices in one Choir
" could not be diſtinctly heard in another. On the
" Day following, the King inveſted his Son with the
" military Belt, and conſigned to him the Dutchy of
" *Aquitain*. The Prince being Knighted, went to
" the Church of *Weſtminſter*, that he might confer
" the like military Honour on his Companions;
" there, the Preſs, occaſioned by a promiſcuous Con-
" courſe of People, was ſo great, before the high Al-
" tar, that two Knights were ſtifled; and ſeveral faint-
" ed away; for every Knight had, at leaſt, *Three other*
" *Knights* to conduct and ſupport him. But the
" Prince was obliged, by Reaſon of the tumultuous
" Croud, to inveſt his Companions upon the high

" Al-

" Altar, having, by his Guards, made Way for them
" to paſs through the People. Then were brought and
" preſented two Swans, introduced with much Pomp,
" and covered with golden Nets, adorned and em-
" boſſed with golden Studs, a Solemnity highly grate-
" ful to the Spectators: The King offered a Vow to
" God, upon the Preſentation of the Swans, that he
" would make a Deſcent upon *Scotland*, with a De-
" ſign, whether he ſhould live or die in the Attempt,
" to revenge the Death of *John Cousin*, and the vio-
" lated Faith of the *Scots*, &c.

Thus *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* deſcribes the Celebration of this great Feſtival; wherein there is a particular Article, ſomewhat foreign indeed to our Subject; which, however, I ſhall proceed, directly, to explain; that is, a Vow, made upon the Exhibition, beforementioned, of two Swans, in Conformity to an Uſage, continued for-

---

g In the ſumptuous Feſtival held by Philip *Duke of* Burgundy *at* Liſle, *on the* 17*th of* February 1453, *after the Juſts were finiſhed*, " En telle ordon-
" nance vinrent les Officiers d'Armes, & le dernier d'eux eſtoit *Toiſon d'Or*
" Roy d'Armes, lequel portoit en ſes mains un Phaiſant en vie, orne d'une
" riche Collier d'Or garny de pierres fines, & de perles." — Et apres la re-
verence le dit *Toiſon d'Or* parla a iceluy Duc en cette maniere, Treſhaut & treſpuiſſant Prince & mon tres redoubte Seigneur, Voyez icy les Dames, qui treſhumblement ſe recomandent a vous: & pour ce, que c'eſt la couſtume, qui a eſte anciennement inſtitue, qu'es grandes Feſtes & nobles Aſſemblees, on preſente aux Prince, & Seigneurs, & aux nobles Hommes le Paon, ou quelqu' autre noble Oyſeau, pour faire des voeux utils, & valables: pour ce ſubject on m' a envoye avec ces deux Damoiſelles, pour vous preſenter ce noble Phaiſant; vous prians que le veillez avoir en ſouvenance; ces paroles eſtans dites, iceluy Duc prit un brief eſcrit, lequel il baſilla a *Toiſon d'Or*, &c. *and thereon he vows an Expedition againſt the* Turks, *Hiſt. Chronolog. du* Charles 8. *p.* 672. *and the ſame Narrative is in* Olivier de la Marche, *p.* 428.

Chifflet Breviar. Hiſt. Velleris Aurei, c. 3. *endeavours to explain this Cuſtom.*

ſome-

ſome Ages; according to which, when any hoſtile Expedition was intended, the commanding Prince formally and ſolemnly bound himſelf to execute it upon the Oblation of ſome Bird, as a viſible Teſt or Signal of ſuch Engagement.

Matthew of *Weſtminſter* informs us, the Creation of theſe Knights was made, by Virtue of Writs directed to the Sheriffs, and we find indeed ſuch Writs upon [b]Record: and it is farther acknowledged, that other Writs were at [i] that Time alſo ſent to the Sheriffs towards an Election of Members of Parliament, to the End, ſuch Aid might be given, which ſhould become due to the King upon the Knighthood of this Prince: But if any of the young Gentlemen, the Sons of Earls, Barons, or Knights, as our Hiſtorian doth ſeverally denominate them, who was to be promoted to this Degree, had not arrived to the Age of One and twenty Years; or if any of them was not ſeized of an Eſtate, to the Value required by the Law; in either of theſe Caſes, a Proclamation by the Sheriff could not extend to bring ſuch Perſon under an Obligation to

---

b Claus 34 *E.* 1. m. 16. dorſo. Rex Vic. Linc. Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod per totam ballivam tuam in locis, quibus videris expedire, tam infra Libertates, quam extra, publice proclamari facias ex parte noſtra, quod omnes illi, qui Milites non ſunt & Milites eſſe voluerint, veniant uſq; *London'* citra diem *Pentecoſtes* prox. futur. ad apparatus ſuos eis in hoc caſu neceſſarios de Garderoba noſtra recipiendos de dono noſtro, ut Arma Militaria de nobis ibidem ſuſcipere valeant dicto die. Teſte Rege apud Woluеſeye 6 die Aprilis. Edem modo mandatum eſt ſingulis Vicecomitibus Angliæ.

i Rym. Fœdera, vol. 2. ad A. D. 1306.

accept

accept the Degree of Knighthood: And they being Perſons of the firſt Diſtinction, as it may be concluded from a Liſt of their Names publiſhed by [k] Mr. *Aſhmole*, there is no Queſtion, but the determinate Ages of ſeveral of them may be aſcertained from Records, which I am not now at leiſure to conſult, and therefore ſhall only obſerve, at preſent, that many of them are expreſsly mentioned in that Liſt, as Sons of particular Perſons; ſome of whom, it is ſuppoſed, might be living at the ſame Time. The Crown indeed was intereſted, in order to ſupport a conſiderable Branch of the Revenue, not to admit any Perſon under Age to the Dignity of Knighthood, upon the Summons, and Return of the Sheriff; becauſe, in caſe any Minor ſhould have been actually knighted, the King had loſt the Benefit of the Royal Prerogative, in reſpect to the Wardſhip of his Body, and the Marriage of his Perſon: and therefore, antiently, in Grants of Wardſhip by the Crown, there was a ſpecial [l] Proviſion, that the Aſſignee, or Guardian ſhould not aſſiſt his Pupil, in any Meaſures, towards his Reception of Knighthood, 'till the King's Conſent ſhould be previouſly obtained: and for this Reaſon it is ſtill ſuppoſed, upon good Grounds,

---

k Hiſtory of the Garter, *p.* 38.

l Rot. Pip. 15 *H.* 2. Norf. Avelina de Ria reddit compotum de 140*l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* quod fecit filium ſuum militem, qui erat in cuſtodia Regis.

Cart. 5 Joh. n. 199. *Wardſhip of* Rob. de Stutevill *granted the to Archbiſhop*, dum ipſum non maritabit, nec militem faciet, niſi per voluntatem noſtram.

that Gentlemen under Age, who were to be advanced to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, had Letters Miſſive, from the Crown, immediately directed to them, or to their Guardians, requiring them to receive that Degree upon ſolemn Occaſions: And conſequently, it ſeems, no Minor was under any Engagement to receive it, by Virtue of any Mandate directed to the Sheriff. For, as to this Writ of 34 *Edward* I, now under Conſideration, it may be proper to adverti ſe, that it is only a Proclamation of Favour or Indulgence, inviting ſuch Perſons, who were not already Knights, "*qui milites non ſunt, & milites eſſe voluerint*," and were deſirous to receive Knighthood, that they might appear to accept that Degree; and not a Proclamation, by Way of Command, or ſtrict authoritative Compulſion to thoſe, who were under any Engagement by Tenure to be Knighted, or elſe might be fined; in which Caſe, the Clauſe was "*omnes, qui milites eſſe debent, & non ſunt*" all ſuch, who *ought* to be Knights, and are not ſo; and the Sheriff is not here directed, or empowered perſonally to ſummon, or to return the Names of any Perſons; which are the Terms uſed in the Form of the Writs, that command Perſons, obliged by Virtue of their Tenures, to take Knighthood upon them: It is highly probable, that in regard to the ready and loyal Zeal of thoſe, who, for the King's Service and Pleaſure, made a voluntary Tender of themſelves, to accept Knighthood on this Occaſion, and did not accept

it

it from any Motive of legal Conſtraint, had ſome particular Marks of Favour then conferred on them.

II. In this Extract we find Muſick, and different Kinds of muſical Inſtruments, which are ſtill retained when Knights of the *Bath* are created, with ſome Variation, as expreſſing the Joy, and contributory to the Grandeur of the Solemnity.

III. Every Knight-Candidate had, at leaſt, three other Knights, *Milites*; which may poſſibly deſign the Veteran Knights, who inſtructed him in the Rules of the *Bath*; and by whom, according to the Ceremonies, ſuch Candidate was to be introduced to the Preſence of the Sovereign, or to his Lieutenant; or we may underſtand by them, the two Eſquires-Governors, and the young Eſquire, who, by the Formularies, are required to attend him.

IV. It appears alſo, there was ſome Difference in the Furniture provided on the Occaſion, according to the different Quality of the Perſons to be created Knights; and the Cuſtom hath been conformable to this Rule: for we find Habits provided under the following Diſtinctions, [m] *tanquam pro Milite ſimplici*, as, for Knights ſimple; [n] *tanquam pro Baneretto*, as, for Knights-Banne-

[m] Append. Numb. 10, 16.
[n] Appendix, *in ſeveral Places.*

 rets;

rets; [o] *tanquam pro Comite*, as, for an Earl; [p] *comme pour celuy, qui eſt fitz de Conte*, as, for the Son of an Earl.

V. In Regard to the Number of the Knights mentioned by this Hiſtorian, I muſt take the Liberty of remarking, upon the Authority of the Record here referred to, that he was miſtaken. There were not, as it appears from this Inſtrument, Three hundred Gentlemen then knighted, but only Two hundred ſixty ſeven; whoſe Names being already printed by [q] Mr. *Aſhmole*, it was not neceſſary to repeat them in the *Appendix*, where a diſtinct Account is given of the Habits provided by the Wardrobe on the Occaſion. At which Time it is alſo memorable, as I have Authority to obſerve from a Manuſcript in my [r] Cuſtody, that the Earls of *Hertford* and *Lincoln*, at that Time, performed the Ceremony of putting on the Spurs of the Knights; one of the grand Rites in conveying this Degree of Knighthood.

Under the Reign of *Edward* II, the Accounts of the Wardrobe are ſtill more expreſs, and particular, in mentioning the Articles relating to the Creation of

---

o Appendix, Numb. 20.
p Appendix, Numb. 13.
q *Hiſtory of the* Garter, p. 37.
r Appendix, Numb. 14.

Knights;

Knights; they recite, that Orders were given for providing, [s] *Capam intus vigilandum*, an Outer-garment; for that, doubtleſs, is the [t] Signification of the Term, to defend them from the cold Air of the Night; and we learn alſo from the ſame Accounts, that this [u] Garment was of a mixed, or murray Colour.

The Creation, upon the 20th Day of *January*, in the [x] twentieth Year of *Edward* II, was appointed, by the Command of the King's eldeſt Son; between which Time, and the Renunciation of his Father, only five Days intervened; and therefore the Knights, for whom Robes were then prepared upon this Mandate, are concluded to have been Knights of the *Bath*, who attended on the [y] Son's Coronation, on the firſt Day of *February* following. Theſe Orders diſcover a farther Particular, that Cloth of Gold, grounded upon diapred Silk, was alſo then delivered; which, in the Accounts of ſucceeding Reigns, is often termed *Racamatz*, and *Sigaſton*.

The next [z] Inſtrument, to which I refer, bears date five Days after, being the Day of *Edward* the Third his Acceſſion to the Throne; at which Time, he had not himſelf been knighted: It bears the expreſs Title *pro Militia Regis*, for the King's Knighthood, and contains

---

[s] Appendix, Numb. 16.
[t] Du Freſne Gloſſ. v. Capa.
[u] Appendix, Numb. 16, 20. [x] Append. Numb. 20.
[y] Dugd. 1 Vol. Baron. *p.* 143. *of the* Mortimers, *and in ſeveral other Places.*
[z] Appendix, Numb. 21.

the

the ſeveral Materials provided by the Wardrobe for that purpoſe, and they are ſuch, which are ſtill continued for the ſame Uſe; though for the King's Service, upon this his perſonal Knighthood, they were of a more rich and curious Compoſition.

It is more particularly remarkable, from this Record, that with reference to the Ornaments of the Chamber, wherein the King was to *bathe*, there is a Circumſtance mentioned, which diſcovers, the King's Arms were placed in the Corners of the Tapeſtry; and the Method of placing the armorial Enſigns of Knights of the *Bath*, in the Room where they *bathe*, ſtill continues. It likewiſe appears from the ſame Record, the King performed his Vigils on the Laſt of *January*; and we know, that he was ſolemnly crowned on the Day following.

Our Writers are divided in Opinion, as to the [a] particular Perſon, by whom this Creation of Knighthood was actually ſolemnized: they who ſuppoſe him to have been [b] *John* of *Heinault*, afterward Earl of *Cambridge*, ſeem to me to form their Judgment upon the moſt probable Grounds, as it was more eſpecially, by his Intereſt, this King obtained the Throne.

In the [c] third Year of his Reign, there is an Entry, directing Proviſions to be made for Vigils, Beds, and

---

a *By* Henry *Earl of* Lancaſter. Walſ. Ypod. Neuſtr. *p.* 509. n. 30.

b Cleopatra D. 9. in Bibl. Cotton. *Edwardus* in feſto Sanctæ *Brigidæ* a *Johanne* fratre Comitis *Hannoniæ* miles factus, & eodem die in Regem conſecratus.

c Appendix, Numb. 22.

Robes,

Robes, according to the uſual Manner: and in the Year [d] following there is the like Entry in Behalf of five Knights, who were, probably, made at the Coronation of the Queen-Conſort, mentioned in that Account as crowned on the 18th of *February*: One of theſe Knights, *Thomas de Bradſtan*, by ſpecial Favour from the Crown, received an Augmentation of ſeveral Preſents, above the uſual ſtated Allowances; among which were four Pair of Spurs, ſix Pair of Gloves, three Girdles of white Silk, four Pair of Hoſe or Stockings of brown Cloth, one Saddle *cum arſone alba*, with a white Saddle-bow, a ſhaving Baſon, &c. all which Articles are ſtill uſed by Knights of the *Bath*, at their Inveſtiture.

In the [e] fifth Year of this Reign, Sir *Walter Manny* had Materials appointed for his Vigils and Bed: This Knight rendered himſelf moſt famous, by a Courſe of martial and brave Exploits, for which he was at length deſervedly elected a Companion of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*.

In the [f] two Years ſucceeding, we find the uſual Preparations in favour of ſeveral Judges, who were to be created Knights: and in the [g] 21ſt of the ſame King, *Maurice Fitz-Thomas* of *Ireland*, *Philip de Staunton*, and *Thomas de Fencotes* had the like Materials for their

---

d Appendix, Numb. 23. *e* Append. Numb. 24. *f* Appendix, Numb. 25, 26. *g* Appendix, Numb. 27.

Knight-

Knighthood on the Day of our Lord's Nativity; afterwards, in the [b] 34th of this Reign, two Judges received alſo the like Proviſions for Knighthood at *Chriſtmas*.

In the 7th Year of [i] *Richard* II, two Judges of the *Common Pleas* had the like Furniture for their Knighthood at the ſame Feſtival; and in the eleventh [k] Year, Orders were iſſued for providing the uſual Materials for the Knighthood of the two Chief Juſtices, who were to receive this Degree at *Windſor* on the Feaſt of St. *George*. In the Twelfth of that Reign, there is a Bill [l] of Account, which mentions the ſilken Lace, the black Stockings, the white Scabbard for the Sword, a black Saddle with a white Saddle-bow, the pectoral Plate, and the black Bridle for the Horſe, *&c.* all which are ſtill uſed by Knights of the *Bath*, upon their Creations. And, in the following [m] Year, Directions were given, that Robes ſhould be prepared for the Earls of *March* and of *Stafford*; and for *Alfonſus*, Son of the Count of *Denia* in *Arragon*, with the requiſite Proviſions for their *Bathing*, and Beds, at the Feaſt of St. *George*, in the ſaid Year. The Father of this *Alfonſus* having been taken Priſoner in the Battle of *Nazarre*, the Son was ſent a *Hoſtage* into *England*, as Security for his Honour, and Appearance: Our Records and Hiſtorians inform us, that he reſided here

---

b Appendix, Numb. 28. *i* Append. Numb. 29. *k* Append. Numb. 30. *where, inſtead of* 2 R. 2. *ſhould be* 11 R. 2. *l* Append. Numb. 31. *m* Append. Numb. 32.

for

for ſeveral Years in that Quality, his Father not having taken care to perform the Conditions neceſſary to his Diſcharge and Return; yet, during the whole Time of his Reſidence, though ſo long protracted; he gave all poſſible Proof, that he had, with a ſtrict Notion, a moſt tender and powerful Senſe of Honour, and that no Temptation, or Opportunity could ever induce him to entertain a Thought of falſifying his Promiſe.

The next Extract, to which I refer, is taken from *Froiſſart* [n], wherein we have an Account of the Knighthood conferred on the four Kings of *Ireland* by *Richard* the Second, after they had performed their Vigils. The printed Copy repreſents theſe Kings as *ſitting*, on that Day, at King *Richard*'s Table: But, according to a very beautiful [o] Manuſcript-Copy of our Hiſtorian, curiouſly embelliſhed with Limnings in the brighteſt Colours, theſe *Iriſh* Potentates *ſerved* that Day at the King's Table; though there is an obvious Method, which may be propoſed, for reconciling the ſeeming Difference between theſe two Accounts. There are reaſonable Grounds to conclude, that theſe *Iriſh* Kings, upon their Appearance at the Court of the King of *England*, in order to take this Degree, might, in the Quality of Eſquires, according to the Formulary, *ſerve* up the firſt Diſhes, and when they had the Character

n Appendix, Numb. 33.
o *In Cuſtody of Mr.* Woodman *the Bookſeller.*

of this Knighthood actually conferred on them, were then permitted to have the Honour of *ſitting* at Dinner with his Majeſty.

We proceed now to conſider another Report of *Froiſſart's* [p], concerning the Coronation of *Henry* IV, which is acknowledged by Mr. [q] *Camden* to be the moſt ancient Teſtimony he had found, relating to Knights of the *Bath*: [r] Mr. *Selden* adds, "*That the firſt expreſs* "*Mention of them, as a diſtinct Order, is commonly at-* "*tributed to the Beginning of this Reign.*" I ſhall here render the Words of *Froiſſart*, recited in the *Appendix*, and from whom we learn, "That the Vigil before that "Coronation, was on the Evening of *Saterday*, on "that Occaſion, and at that Time, in the *Tower*, "there watched, *ſaith he*, that Night, all the Eſquires, "who were on the next Morning to be created Knights, "to the Number of Forty-ſix, each of them had "his Eſquire [attending him] a ſeparate Chamber, "and each his ſeparate Bath, where the Rites of Bath-"ing were that Night performed. On the Day fol-"lowing the Duke of *Lancaſter* [*Henry* IV.] at the "Time of celebrating Maſs, created them Knights, "giving them long green Coats, the Sleeves whereof "were cut ſtreight, and furred with Minever, and "with great Hoods or Chaperons furred in the ſame

---

[p] Append. Numb. 34. [q] *Britann.* p, 124. [r] *Titles of Honour*, p. 678.

"Man-

" Manner, and after the Faſhion uſed by Prelates;
" and every one of theſe Knights, on his Left-ſhoul-
" der, had a double Cordon, or String of white Silk,
" to which white Taſſels were pendent."

This Paſſage, it is granted, tho' not eaſily accounted for, when we conſider Mr. *Camden*'s profound Skill in Antiquities, yet, might have been the firſt, that occurred to his Obſervation from our Hiſtorians, printed in his Time, relating to the *Bathing* of Knights in this Kingdom. But this being admitted, by what Rule of Argumentation could any Perſon, from theſe Words of *Froiſſart* infer, that *Knights of the Bath*, had their firſt Inſtitution at that Coronation; or from that Period, commenced to be a diſtinct Order of Knighthood.

An Order, in the large Senſe of the Word, is of equivocal, and very indeterminate Signification; it is attributed indifferently to every Degree of Knighthood; and ſeveral Records in the *Appendix* confeſſedly term that Knighthood, wherein Baths were prepared, a military Order, *ordinem Militarem*: But when we ſpeak of an Order, in a ſtrict, or more reſtrained Senſe, according to the Definition, or rather, as I have choſen to [ſ] expreſs my ſelf, the Deſcription of it, in the Place to which the Reader is here directed; that is, if by an Order, we underſtand a Brotherhood, Fellowſhip, or

[ſ] *Introduct. to the* Regiſter of the Garter, *p.* 63.

Aſſociation of a certain Number of actual Knights; ſubjected under a Sovereign, or *Great Maſter*, united by particular Laws and Statutes, peculiar to that Society, not only diſtinguiſhed by particular Habits, Enſigns, Badges, or Symbols, which uſually give Denomination to that Order; but having a Power, as Vacancies happen in their College, ſucceſſively, of nominating, or electing proper Perſons to ſucceed, with Authority to aſſemble, and hold Chapters; according to this State of an Order, it is not eaſy to be conceived, how any learned Man could ever infer, from the forecited Teſtimony of *Froiſſart*, that the Knights of the *Bath* had their Commencement at this Time, as Knights ſtrictly and regularly of a Military Order.

But not to inſiſt upon the ambiguous Signification of Words, or to enter upon a ſpecifick Enquiry here, whether the Knighthood of the *Bath*, was properly an Order of Knighthood at this Time, or in any former Time; this is certain, from the Authority of unqueſtionable Records; that, long before this Time, Proviſions were made for the *Baths*, and Coverings of the Baths, prepared at the Creation of Knights.

There is a [t] Record ſtill remaining, which ſpecifies the very Materials delivered from the Wardrobe for theſe Knights, made at the Coronation of *Henry* IV,

---

t Append. Numb. 36.

which

which were no more, than an Upper-coat of Ruſſet for the Vigils, a Mantle of green Tartarin irradiated with Gold, furred with Minever, and Cloth of Gold, termed *Racamatz*, for their Beds, with Linnen of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*, and *Carde*; all which Articles are contained in Words of the ſame import, in the Accounts of the Wardrobe inſerted in the Collections, which were for ſeveral Reigns antecedent to the Reign of *Henry* IV.

From this Record, we likewiſe learn the Names of ſome of the Perſons, who had then this Knighthood of the *Bath* conferred on them.

Thomas, *John*, and *Humfrey*, the younger Sons of that King, were then in their Infancy: The [w] Firſt was born in 1388, the Second in 1389, and the Laſt in 1390; and this their Father's Coronation was on the Thirteenth [x] of *October* 1329.

Mr. [y] *Sandford* ſaith, That the eldeſt Son of the King, was then likewiſe created a Knight of the *Bath*, which muſt be a Miſtake; for I may affirm, with aſſurance, upon good Grounds, though I cannot diſtinctly recollect my Authority for my Aſſertion, that this moſt heroick Prince received the Honour of Knighthood from *Richard* II, in *Ireland*.

---

[w] MS. in Offic. Arm. inter Cod. Norf. n. 48.
[x] Rot. Parl. 1 *H.* 4. n. 61.
[y] *Geneal. Hiſt.* p. 267.

There

There were likewiſe ſeveral of the Nobility then promoted to the ſame Dignity, whoſe Names are recited in this Inſtrument; but the Time, to which I have limited my ſelf, doth not permit me to make ſuch diſtinct Inquiry, as may preciſely determine their reſpective Ages: and for the ſame Reaſon I have not, in the former Part of this *Introduction*, deſcended to ſpecify the Ages of thoſe Noblemen who were honoured with this Degree. However, I think proper, incidentally, to take notice, from a Circumſtance, which leaves no Room for Doubt, or Uncertainty, that the Earl of *Arundel*, the Firſt of the Noblemen here mentioned, who were not Princes of the Blood, was at this Time only fourteen Years old; for, upon the Death of his [z] Mother, in the ſixth Year of this King's Reign, he was in the twentieth Year of his Age.

The Record concludes, by naming Sir ..... *Beaumond*, with Thirty-three Knights beſides, then created; though, the Names of theſe Knights are not inſerted; which Omiſſion *Hollingſhead* hath, in ſome Meaſure, ſupplied [a]. And here it may not be improper for me to remark, that beſides the legal and cuſtomary Fees, which Knights of the *Bath* were obliged to pay to the Heraldick Officers; the King himſelf, by Way of *Largeſſe*, out of his Royal Munificence, ordered a certain

---

z Eſch. 6 *H.* 6. n. 31.

a Append. Numb. 35.

[b] Sum

Sum [b] to be diſtributed among them, for their Attendance at the Solemnity of creating theſe Knights; and we find the like [c] Orders iſſued by the Kings his Succeſſors.

At the [d] Coronation of *Henry* V, we have a particular Detail of the Ceremonies uſed in creating Knights of the *Bath*; of which, a Tranſlation is here exhibited. "In the Year 1413, in the twenty-ſixth Year "of the Age of *Henry* V, on a *Friday*, which pre- "ceeded the *Sunday* before the Paſſion [Week], all "the Requiſites for his Coronation having been pre- "pared by the Direction of his Miniſters, according "to the ancient, and laudable Rites, and Uſages of "the Kingdom: The King, accompanied with a no- "ble and numerous Train of Lords Spiritual, and "Temporal, ſet forward from his Palace of *Kingſton* "upon *Thames*, towards the *Tower* of *London*: he was "met on the Way by a great Number of Earls, Ba- "rons, Knights, Eſquires, and other his Subjects of "Condition; particularly, the Citizens of *London*; "who made a ſplendid, and handſome Appearance; "ſparing no Expence, whereby they might teſtify their "Zeal and Exultation, while the Clergy made a re- "gular Proceſſion, with much Solemnity. The King, "in this Manner, and under ſo many Marks of Ho-

---

b Appendix, Numb. 36. 7 *c* Appendix, Numb. 45. 47.
d Append. Numb. 37.

"nour,

" nour, was conducted to the *Tower* of *London*; where,
" about fifty gallant young Gentlemen, or more, of
" noble Birth, well qualified, to receive the Degree
" of Knighthood, waited in expectation, that they
" might receive this Honour from the Hands of ſo
" great a Monarch, at the firſt opening of ſo glo-
" rious a Solemnity. Theſe young Candidates, be-
" ing decently habited in their proper Veſtments, to
" expreſs the more Honour to the King at ſo grand
" a Feaſt, to which nothing requiſite for the Magni-
" ficence of it was wanting; and while his Majeſty in
" royal State, as became his Dignity, was attended
" by the great Lords; thoſe Candidates, in Teſtimo-
" ny, that they ſhould not be obliged at any Time
" future, to do the like Service in the Habit of Eſquires,
" ſerved up the Diſhes at this royal Feſtival, accord-
" ing to the received Uſage: and, immediately, af-
" ter the Entertainment was concluded, they retired
" to an Apartment appointed and prepared for that
" Uſe; where Dukes, Earls, Barons, and honourable
" Knights, as their Counſellors, or Directors, inſtru-
" cted them concerning their proper Rules of Beha-
" viour upon their Acceſſion to this venerable Order;
" and with much prudent, and forcible Perſuaſion,
" taught them what they ought to do, if they would
" faithfully diſcharge the proper Duties of it. The
" young Candidates, according to Cuſtom, at a con-
" venient Time preſcribed, went into the *Baths* pre-

" pared

" pared ſeverally for them, performing their Vigils,
" and the other Rites, and Exerciſes preparatory to
" this Degree, regularly, with Aſſiduity, and an in-
" tenſe Degree of pious Zeal. The whole Night ha-
" ving been devoted to theſe Lucubrations, early the
" next Morning, upon the firſt Appearance of Light,
" theſe Candidates, having given the rich golden Beds,
" wherein they had repoſed themſelves in the Night,
" to ſome domeſtick Servants of the King's Houſe-
" hold, as their cuſtomary Fee, proceeded to hear
" Maſs; and when they had gone regularly through
" the Courſe of their Devotion, having mounted their
" fine Horſes, they rode, in their rich ſilk Mantles, 'till
" they came to the Gate of the Royal Palace; where,
" deſcending from their Horſes, each of them, being
" ſupported by two Knights, and conducted with all
" proper Marks of Honour, and Reſpect, ſuitable to
" his different Quality, was introduced, and preſent-
" ed to the King; who, ſitting in royal State, the
" Throne being ſurrounded with a numerous Train of
" noble and great Perſonages, promoted them ſeveral-
" ly to the Honour of Knighthood: After their In-
" veſtiture, they were permitted to ſit down in their
" rich ſilk Mantles in the King's Preſence; but did
" not, during the whole Time of Dinner, taſte
" any Part of the Entertainment. After the roy-
" al Feaſt was concluded, the young Knights di-
" veſting themſelves of their Mantles, put on rich

" Robes, being the King's *Livery* of the ſame *Suite*;
" and when the King, in the Vigil of the *Sunday* be-
" fore *Paſſion Week*, rode to *Weſtminſter*, in much State
" and ſolemn Order, attended with a great Concourſe
" of Princes and Noblemen, as became the Grandeur of
" ſo potent a Monarch; all theſe young Knights pre-
" ceded the King, riding on their Horſes in admi-
" rable Order, through the Middle of the City, and
" made ſo delightful an Appearance, that all the Spec-
" tators ſeemed to be inebriated with Joy."

Every one of the particular Rites here expreſſed, perfectly agrees with the Ceremonial now in uſe; and from that Uſe, as from the former Quotation about *Geffery* of *Anjou*, and another, that will be inſerted relating to the young King of *Sicily*; we learn, that the Habits[e] of Eſquires were different from thoſe of Knights: And it ſeems to be alſo here intimated, that theſe Candidates had Knights appointed to inſtruct them, which were of their own reſpective, and proper Degrees; becauſe we find ſuch Office of Inſtruction, promiſcuouſly impoſed upon Dukes, Earls, Barons, and Knights, and ſeverally exerciſed by them; of which Practice, Precedents are inſerted in the *Appendix*.

---

e *I may, on ſome future Occaſion, make a Diſquiſition concerning theſe Diſtinctions, in this and foreign Kingdoms; but, to prevent too great an Interruption in the Courſe of theſe Remarks, I ſhall now only refer the Reader to the* Sumptuary Laws.

It may contribute to gratify the Reader's Curioſity, if I ſhould here deſcend to take Notice, concerning the Prohibition, impoſed on a Knight, of not eating the firſt Inſtance whereof, in this *Introduction*, occurs from the Paſſage before us. The Words containing this Prohibition in the Ceremonial, both *French* and *Engliſh*, expreſs, that he ought not to eat or drink, but under the Reſtraint of a Bride, upon the Day of her Marriage. This Rule, as it relates to the other Sex, appears to have been more peculiarly adapted to the native Innocency, and ſimple Manner of former Ages. It may not be unentertaining to cite a Paſſage from † *Chaucer*, upon this Occaſion, which diſcovers how reſerved, and modeſt, the Comportment of our *Engliſh* Ladies was, in his Time.

The Names of the Knights then created, may be collected from the ‡ Record of the Wardrobe; and the preparatory Materials for their Creation were, according to uſual Precedents, delivered out of that Office.

This King, in the [b] fifth Year, or rather, according to more exact Computation, in the Sixth, promoted

† *The Merchants Tale of the Marriage of* January *with* May, *v.* 1375.

but freſſe May
Holdith hir Chamber unto the fourth Day,
As uſage is of Wivis for the beſt, &c.

‡ 1400.

A Cuſtome is unto theſe Nobils all,
A Bride ſhall nat eten in the Hall,
Till Dayes four, other thre at the leſte
Ypaſſid bin, then let her go to Feſte.

[g] Appendix, Numb. 38. [b] Appendix, Numb. 39.

ſeveral Perſons to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, whilſt he was in *Normandy*, on the Anniverſary Feaſt of St. *George*.

In his [i] ninth Year, upon the ſame Anniverſary, at *Windſor*, he conferred the like Dignity upon the King of *Scotland*, and upon the Earl of *Stafford*. This King was *James*, the *Firſt* of the Name, in that antient Monarchy; who, in the ninth Year of his Age, 1406, whilſt his Father was yet living, being ſent toward *France*, in order to his Education, was taken in the Voyage by the *Engliſh*, and brought into this Kingdom; where he was detained, for the Space of eighteen Years.

This is the laſt Account, from the Wardrobe, to which I have referred, in the *Appendix*; though a much greater Number of Precedents might have been cited, from that Office, if the Occaſion of my treating, profeſſedly, upon this Subject, had been foreſeen. But when I peruſed the Records of the Wardrobe, having no Deſign of collecting from them, any Informations, but what related to the *Hiſtory of the moſt Noble Order of the* GARTER, I only made Extracts of ſuch Memoirs, as had ſome more ſpecial, and direct Reference to that Undertaking.

After the Demiſe of this moſt victorious King, we find, in the Inventory and [k] Appraiſement of the

---

[i] Appendix, Numb. 40.

[k] Appendix, Numb. 41.

Goods,

Goods, which he deviſed for Payment of his Debts, an Article, ſpecifying *Tartarin* irradiated, for the Habit of Knights of the *Bath*.

Henry the Sixth was *l* born on the Feſtival of St. *Nicholas*, in *December* 1421, and on *Whitſunday* 1426, he was knighted *m* by his Uncle the Duke of *Bedford*, who had himſelf been created Knight of the *Bath* in the *n* firſt Year of his Father's Reign. This Record, indeed, according to the Letter of it Imports, that a Summons was iſſued to ſeveral Perſons, requiring their Appearance, in order to their being knighted with the King, without deſcending to ſpecify the particular Degree of Knighthood, which was then to be conferred: But that theſe Perſons here ſummoned, had really the Knighthood, of the *Bath* conferred on them, may be concluded from what hath been obſerved *o* before, concerning the Practice in the like Caſes. For here ſome of theſe Mandates were immediately directed to the Guardians of young Gentlemen, who were in Wardſhip, and others to the Parents of young Perſons of noble Birth, to attend, in purſuance of ſuch Summons, to receive Knighthood: So that according to my former Conjecture, for I only call it ſo, tho' it hath ſo many ſtrong Appearances of Probability and Truth, whenever Letters Miſſive to the like effect were

l Walſingham, *p.* 406. *m* Append. Numb. 42. *n* Appendix, Numb. 36. *o See above*, p. 24, 25, 26.

thus

thus ſent by the Crown on ſolemn Occaſions, and at royal Feaſts, directly to the Perſons, or to the Guardians of thoſe, who were in their Minority to command their Appearance, in order to their being knighted, and not by the Intervention of Writs to the Sheriffs; which Practice will be confirmed by ſeveral Inſtances in the Sequel; It is again concluded, that Knights created at ſuch ſolemn Feſtivals, in purſuance of ſuch Summons, were of a different Degree of Knighthood, from Knights made in purſuance of Writs directed to the Sheriff; which was the Thing to be proved.

Notwithſtanding this late Creation, about two Years, and ſix Months afterward, there were Thirty-two, others ſay, Thirty-four Knights of the *Bath* made, at the [p] Coronation of this King.

The Serjeant of the Ewery, who had exerciſed the Office of a Barber, at the Gate of the Royal Palace, and enjoyed the Profits appertaining to that Office, preferred a Petition to the Crown, in the Twenty-fifth Year of this Reign; and, upon his Petition, that Employment was confirmed to him, and to another Perſon, with all appendent Advantages, together, as it is expreſſed in the [q] Patent, with the Fees payable by thoſe, who ſhould be created Knights of the *Bath*; that is, "from "every Knight twenty-four Ells of Linnen-cloth;

---

g Appendix, Numb. 43. *h* Append. Numb. 44.

"which

" which was to be placed about the Bathing-Veſſel;
" with a Tapet, or Carpet of red Worſted; and twen-
" ty Shillings for ſhaving him; forty Shillings from
" every Baron, or his *Peer*; one hundred Shillings from
" every Earl, or his *Peer*; and ten Pounds from every
" Duke, or his *Peer*, ſeverally, on the ſame Ac-
" count."

It hath been formerly [r] obſerved, that in the Directions to the Wardrobe, for preparing Materials, at the Creation of theſe Knights, it is provided there ſhould be a Diſtinction in the Habits, according to the different Qualities of the Candidates to be created Knights; and that, which was an Act of pure arbitrary Favour from the Crown, Habits of ſuperior Diſtinction, ſhould be given to Perſons, for which their Quality could not, regularly, or directly, entitle them; and yet, on whom that Mark of Favour was conferred, as if they had been really, and actually, qualified by ſuch Titles to receive it; which Remark may ſerve to render more intelligible the Meaning of the Specifications already mentioned, *tanquam pro Banneretto*; *tanquam pro Comite*, &c. whereby it might be imported, that theſe Perſons were, on the Occaſion, conſidered, as equal, or *Peers*; and accordingly, veſted in ſuch Habits, though they were not really and legally of the ſame Degree: and the ſame Remark may, in ſome meaſure, ſerve alſo to ex-

r *See above*, p. 27.

plain

plain these Entries, in the forecited Patent, *Peers* to a Duke, to an Earl, and to a Baron; to which it may be farther added, that though the eldest Son of a Duke hath no Claim to the Right of Peerage in Parliament; yet he is, by his Birth, entitled to precede an Earl; as the eldest Sons of Earls precede Barons; and therefore the Sons of the higher Nobility, with reference to this Degree of Knighthood, may be esteemed Peers to the lower Distinctions of Nobility; accordingly, the eldest Sons of the higher Nobility, invested with this Degree of Knighthood, paid Fees to the Heralds, in some stated Proportion, according to the Precedence due to their Birth: For example, the [s] Son to the Marquess of *Dorset* paid fifty Shillings, upon his advancement to this Degree, at the Creation of *Henry* Duke of *York*, when the Barons, then promoted, paid only forty Shillings; and on Account of such Difference in the Habits, the Earl of *Derby* created Knight of the *Bath*, at the Coronation of Queen *Anne Bullen*, in compounding with the Heralds, paid a larger [t] Sum, for his Robe, than the Lord *Vaux* paid, on the same Occasion; and Sir *Thomas Howard*, Son to the Earl of *Surrey*, made Knight of the *Bath* at the Coronation of Queen *Mary*, paid [u] Fees to the Officers of Arms, equal to those paid by the Lords, who were then also created.

---

[s] Append. Numb. 59. [t] *Partition-Book in the* Herald's Office, *p.* 49, 50.
[u] Ibid. *p.* 153 *b.*

This

This Conjecture, which I have here made, and which is propoſed only as a Conjecture, ſeems to me, at preſent, to give the moſt ſpecious Account concerning the Diſtinction of *Peers* to Earls, and *Peers* to Barons: As to the other Branch of the Diſtinction in the Patent, *Peers* to Dukes, it may probably denote the younger Sons of the Blood-Royal, who might have this Dignity conferred on them, antecedently to their Creation, by Patent, to any determinate Title of Peerage. The three [x] younger Sons, for Inſtance, of *Henry* the Fourth, were created Knights of the *Bath*, before any one of them was actually poſſeſſed of ſuch Title of Peerage.

Upton, a Writer of great Knowledge, Reputation, and Authority, in Affairs relating to Heraldry, and the Rules of conferring Knighthood, flouriſhed in this Reign; and he expreſsly [y] recites this Method of creating Knights by *Bathing*, and gives a Deſcription of a white Enſign [Stigma] as it may be rendered; which, he ſaith, the new-created Knight was to wear, 'till he ſhould perform ſome gallant Exploit, in caſe no Lady, before that time, or when no opportunity for ſignalizing his Proweſs might intervene, ſhould, by a gentle Violence, pluck that Badge of Probation away from him. It is obſervable, that the Paſſage, upon which I am now reflecting, ſuppoſes, that the Wearing this

x Appendix, Numb. 36. y Append. Numb. 46.

white Enſign, was agreeable to the antient eſtabliſhed Cuſtom in *England*, and is, as he ſaith, particularly enjoined in the *Ceremonial*, "*uti docet Conſuetudo Angliæ*," to which may be added another memorable Circumſtance from him, that this Knighthood was conferred, in Time of Peace, "*ubi regnat Pax*;" in which Obſervation he might probably have an Eye to the Title of the Treatiſe in the *French* Language hereafter quoted, and inſerted in the *Appendix*, concerning the Form of creating Knights of the *Bath*. I ſhall alſo endeavour, in the Sequel, to prove, that this very Formulary hath in it certain Characters, which ſhew, it was compiled, and perhaps for ſome conſiderable Time before the Age, wherein *Upton* wrote.

We ſhall now proceed to the Facts, which I have thought moſt proper to ſelect, in reference to the preſent Subject, that occur in the Reign of *Edward* IV, at whoſe [z] Coronation in *June* 1461, his Brothers, the Duke of *Clarence*, and *Glouceſter*, were, with ſeveral other Perſons of Diſtinction, created Knights of the *Bath*, in the *Tower*. The Duke of *Clarence* was then in the twelfth, and the Duke of *Glouceſter* only in the ninth Year of his Age; the Former was [a] born in *Ireland* on the 22d of *October* 1449; the Younger, at *Fodringay* [b] on the 2d of *October* 1452; and, in the

z Append. Numb. 47. n. 48. b Ibid.

a MS. in Offic. Armor. inter Cod. Norf.

Rites

Rites of this Ceremony, we have a ſpecifick Account of their wearing white ſilk Tokens, or Laces, on their Shoulders, beſides their Gowns, and Hoods.

Scarce three Years were expired, before a new Creation was ſolemnized on occaſion of Crowning the Queen-Conſort, when two [c] Noblemen of *Gaſcoign* had this Dignity conferred on them; a Dignity received with ſuch Oſtentation of State, and Magnificence, that a ſpecial Proviſion was made in the [d] Statute againſt giving Liveries, that it ſhould not however extend to the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*.

In the [e] Regulation of the Houſehold, ſettled by this King, there are References to the Fees, which ariſe, as due from the Knights of the *Bath* at their creation, both to the heraldick Officers, and to the Service of the *Wait*, who attended their Vigils.

This King, in the fifteenth Year of his Reign 1475, made a very [f] magnificent Promotion of his two Sons, the Prince of *Wales*, and the Duke of *York*. The Prince had not, at that Time, compleated the fifth Year of his Age, and the Duke is ſaid by Mr. [g] *Sandford* to have been born on the 18th Day of *May* 1474, by [h] others on the 17th of *Auguſt* 1472; at this Promotion *Thomas Gray*, then Earl of *Huntington*, the Son of the

---

c Appendix, Numb. 48.
d Appendix, Numb. 49.
e Append. Numb. 50.
f Append. Numb. 51.
g *Geneal. Hiſt.* p. 415.
h *Collect.* Thinne, Lancaſter, B. 2. penes me, p. 292.

Queen-Conſort by her firſt Husband, had the Knighthood of the *Bath* conferred on him, and after he was actually, and really inveſted with that Dignity, the King immediately created him Marqueſs of *Dorſet*; and then he had the Privilege of ſitting at Dinner, in the Robes of that Eſtate, above the other Habits appropriated to the Degree of the *Bath*. At the ſame time, ſeveral Perſons of the firſt Diſtinction, and in the higheſt Favour at Court, were advanced to this Honour, whoſe Names will be found in the [i] *Appendix*: But it ought here to be particularly obſerved, the King, at the Time of conferring this Honour upon them, did himſelf perſonally condeſcend to inſtruct them in the Nature and Duties of it; and this Precedent was followed in ſeveral [k] Creations under the Reigns of ſucceeding Kings.

The Reader may likewiſe find in the [l] *Appendix*, the Names of thoſe who were created Knights of the *Bath*, *when* the Marriage of the Duke of *York*, the younger Son of *Edward* IV, with the Daughter and Heireſs of the Duke of *Norfolk*, was ſolemniſed. The next Inſtrument regularly, in order of Time, ſhould have been inſerted before, under the fourth Year of this King's Reign; it reports the [m] Sentence given againſt Sir *Ralph Gray*, by which he was degraded from his

---

i Append. Numb. 51.
l Appendix, Numb. 52.
k Appendix, Numb. 56. 58, 59, 60.
m Appendix, Numb. 53.

Cha-

Character, as Knight of the *Bath*; for he is ſo expreſsly ſtiled, in a [m] Copy which I have, of the Proceedings in that Caſe, but which would, if tranſcribed here at length, take up a greater Space than my preſent Deſign of Brevity will allow: however, I ſhall occaſionally obſerve, there is no Expreſſion uſed, or any Intimation given of his Perjury and Doubling with *Henry* VI, as he is charged by the Memorial entred in the Year-Books of the Law. I have not yet been able to diſcover the determinate Time, when he was advanced to this Degree, but it is highly probable, it was at ſome Solemnity in the Reign of that Prince, to whoſe Cauſe he at laſt ſacrificed his Life, Fortune, and Honour.

We come now to the Reign of *Edward* the Fifth, when a Deſign was formed, or rather an Appearance of ſuch a Deſign projected by the Duke of *Glouceſter*, who, during the King's Minority, was conſtituted Protector of the Realm, for the King's Coronation on the Twenty-ſecond of *June*, and accordingly [n] Summons, bearing date on the Fifth of that Month, were iſſued immediately, and ſeparately to ſuch Perſons, whoſe Names are recited in the *Appendix*, to appear at the Time appointed, that the Degree of Knighthood might be then conferred on them: In which Summons, no mention, indeed, is made of Knighthood of the *Bath*;

---

m I. 12. penes me, *p.* 556. *n* Appendix, Numb. 54.

yet

yet it is evident, that Degree muſt have been here particularly intended, becauſe Writs, dated on the twentieth Day of *May*, iſſued to all the Sheriffs of *England*, for obliging all Perſons, whoſe Eſtates rendered them liable to be ſummoned for that End, to take the Degree of Knighthood; that is, of common or ſimple Knighthood upon them, on the eighth Day of *June*. This Writ, I ſay, to the Sheriffs, was dated on the twentieth Day of *May*; and as it bears a different Date, requires a different Return, and is directed to the Sheriffs, whoſe Authority only extended, and could only extend, in a legal Way, to ſummon Perſons of full Age, who had Eſtates to the annual Value of forty Pounds, to accept ſimple or common Knighthood: We conclude, as in other Caſes of the like [o] circumſtance, that the former Summons reſpected a different Degree of Knighthood, which could be no other, on any reaſonable, or indeed any poſſible Suppoſition, than the Knighthood of the *Bath*: And what is here obſerved, will ſtill be more fully confirmed by the Practice, upon the Acceſſion of ſucceeding Princes to the Throne; from which it will appear, that beſides the Writs iſſued to the Sheriffs in general, to oblige Perſons qualified by their Tenures, to appear, and accept Knighthood, there were ſeparate Summons ſent immediately to Perſons, who are therein expreſsly, and by Name deſigned to be crea-

o *Above* p. 24, 25, 26.

ted

ted Knights of the *Bath*, at their reſpective Coronations.

But the *Protector*, whether he had originally any real Deſign, that his Nephew *Edward* the Fifth ſhould be crowned at the Time appointed; or whether he only diſſembled an Intention to that End, to amuſe the People, to gain Time, or to render his Deſign leſs ſuſpected, 'till they ſhould be more ripe for Execution; whether he was actuated by any of theſe Motives, or by all of them, in giving Notice of the Time propoſed for the King's Coronation; this is certain, that being inſtigated by a Spirit of Ambition, if a cruel, and bloody Attempt againſt all Obligations of Religion, of Honour, of natural Affection, and common Humanity, may be called by ſo ſoft a Name, he became ſoon reſolved to prevent his Nephew's Coronation on the 22d of *June*, by previouſly taking Poſſeſſion himſelf of the Throne, and that too in his own pretended Right, on the 18th of the ſame Month.

And as he had invaded the Crown, ſo, at his own Coronation, according to the uſual Cuſtom and Form, he exerciſed this Act of the Royal Prerogative in creating Knights of the *Bath*, and the Names of thoſe created by him may be found, under the Reference here made to the [p] *Appendix*.

---

[p] Append. Numb. 55.

In

In the ſucceeding Reign of *Henry* VII, we ſhall produce Inſtances, from which it will appear, that at the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, at different Times, there was much Solemnity, and ſeveral grand Rites uſed, which will afford Matter for uſeful, and curious Reflections. This potent and wiſe Prince, had ſo great a Notion concerning the Dignity of this Knighthood, that none of our Monarchs his Predeceſſors, or Succeſſors, ſeem to have conferred it in a more ſolemn, exact, or magnificent Manner, or by more ſignal Acts of a perſonal Adminiſtration. At his Coronation, the young Duke of [q] *Buckingham* was created Knight of the *Bath*, with ſeveral other great Perſonages. In the third Year of that Reign, when the Queen was crowned, there was the like Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, who were called by the *Kings mooſt Honourable Lettres to receyve the Order of Knyghthood*, and there it is immediately expreſſed, that they *were created Knyghts of the* Bath; whoſe Names, with thoſe of the Eſquires-Governours appointed to attend them, may be ſeen in the [r] *Appendix*.

The King having an Intention to create *Arthur*, his eldeſt Son, Prince of *Wales*, he previouſly conferred on him the Knighthood of the *Bath*, on the 20th Day of *December* 1489, when his [ſ] Age did not exceed

---

q Append. Numb. 56. r Appendix, Numb. 57. ſ *Depoſitions in* Lord Herbert's *Hiſt. of* Hen. 8. *p.* 271.

thereon

thereon three Years and three Months. We have a Catalogue of the Names of the Perſons promoted at the ſame Time to this Degree, with a [t] Detail of ſeveral Ceremonies, and Solemnities uſed on that Occaſion; when the King created a Purſivant for this Prince, by the Title of *Walingford*, a Caſtle then belonging to the Prince in Right of his Dutchy of *Cornwall*; and we find a like Precedent by this King, when Knights of the *Bath* were created at his own Coronation; at which Time he inſtituted a Purſivant by the [u] Appellation of *Rouge-dragon*: and I have, in [x] another Place, produced ſeveral Examples, to ſhew, that the Sovereigns of this Kingdom, having the Crown on their Heads, in all Royal State, frequently created, and conferred ſuch Officers.

In the tenth Year of *Henry* VII, we have an Account of the Inveſtiture of his younger Son, the Duke of *York*, (afterward *Henry* VIII.) with this Dignity, on the Eve before *All Saints* Day 1494, and the Names of the Perſons who were at the ſame Time created, with their reſpective Eſquires, are recited in the [y] *Appendix*. It appears remarkable in this Ceremony, that the Lord *William Courteney*, Son of the Earl of *Devon*, who had himſelf been created Knight of the *Bath* in

---

t Appendix, Numb. 58.
u Appendix, Numb. 56.
x *Hiſtory of the* Garter, *p.* 459.
y Appendix, Numb. 59.

the [z] third Year of this Reign, ſhould execute the Office of a young Eſquire to this Prince; and that a particular Conceſſion was made in favour of the Knights then created, by which they were "*licenſed to eat their metts, by-*"*cauſe hyt was faſtyng-day*:" Now, according to the Ceremonial, theſe Knights ought to have abſtained from eating, if it had not been a Faſting-day; and therefore the Reaſons of this Permiſſion to eat, becauſe it was a Faſting-day, I readily acknowledge, appear to me, at preſent, altogether unaccountable. This Prince having been born [a] on the 28th of *June* 1491, was at this Time, in the ſame Year of his Age, with that of his Brother *Arthur*, when he was promoted to this Degree.

At the Celebration of Prince *Arthur*'s Marriage, there was another Creation of Knights, whoſe Names are contained in the [b] *Appendix*; and the Roll, already quoted, ſpecifies Knights made at the Time, when, after his Death, the King's ſecond Son, *Henry*, was created [c] Prince of *Wales*; and here again it is acknowledged, the Roll doth not ſtile thoſe Knights, expreſsly Knights of the *Bath*, but ſimply Knights, without any Addition; however, it may be reaſonably inferred, that theſe were really Knights of the *Bath*, from the Solemnity of the Occaſion, the Dignity of the Perſons knight-

---

z Appendix, Numb. 57.
b Append. Numb. 60.
a Herb. *Hiſt.* Hen. 8. *p.* 272, 274.
c Appendix, Numb. 61.

ed,

ed, and the Method of this Rolle, which only mentions Knights made on ſolemn Occaſions, without ſpecifying the particular Degree of Knighthood conferred on them, though they were, as it hath been proved, created Knights of the *Bath*; but there is no neceſſity of repeating continually, what hath been ſaid in ſupport of this Aſſertion.

Under the Reign of *Henry* VIII, there were two grand Occaſions, the Former, at the Time of his own Coronation, the Other at *that* of his Queen *Anne Bullen*, when Knights of the *Bath* were ſeverally created, whoſe Names are exhibited in their proper [d] Courſe. Sometime before his Demiſe, he deſigned to create his Son *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*, and proper Diſpoſitions were made for that End; and, previouſly, he intended to confer the Knighthood of the *Bath* upon him; for which, ſuitable [e] Apparel was provided; but his Death prevented the Execution of that Deſign.

Several Perſons of the firſt Quality were nominated, in order to their being regularly promoted to this Honour, at the Coronation of *Edward* VI; but by reaſon of ſome Accident, *becauſe the Time* (as it is [f] expreſſed) *was ſo ſhort*, the uſual Ceremonies were, by Diſpenſation, omitted; and to ſupply that Omiſſion, the King having the Crown on his Head, with *greate*

d Appendix, Numb. 62, 63. e Appendix, Numb. 64.
f Appendix, Numb. 65.

Royaltie knighted them, having himſelf firſt received Knighthood from his Uncle the Protector, who was authoriſed by Letters Patent, under the Great, Seal to confer it.

Upon the Acceſſion of Queen *Mary* to the Throne, a [g] Commiſſion was granted to the Earl of *Arundel*, empowering him to make Knights; but without any additional Title, within two Days after the Date of that Patent, which were the two Days preceding her Coronation; in purſuance hereof, we find the Names of the Knights created by him, according to the ſtated Form of creating Knights of the *Bath*, and the Variety of the Ceremonies then uſed, ſo diſtinctly related, that it particularly deſerves to be conſulted in the [b] *Appendix*.

When Queen *Elizabeth* ſucceeded to the Crown, ſhe granted the like Commiſſion to the ſame noble Earl, "*to do, and exerciſe everie thinge, and thinges on hir be-*
"*halfe to be done and exerciſed, for the full making of*
"*Knightes of the* Bath, *and of other Knights*," ſo they are expreſsly diſtinguiſhed. The [i] Preamble to this Commiſſion recites, the Reaſons upon which the Grant of it was made, and thoſe Reaſons are propoſed in ſo good a Light, and ſupported on ſuch good Grounds, that the Reader, in conſulting them, will not find his

---

g Appendix, Numb. 66. h Appendix, Numb. 67, 68.
i Appendix, Numb. 69.

Time

Time diſagreeably employed. The Names of the Perſons advanced to this Dignity, in purſuance of the Commiſſion, will be found in the proper Courſe in the [k] *Appendix*.

In reſpect to theſe Commiſſions of our Queens-Regent, I have, in another [l] Treatiſe, occaſionally mentioned ſomething relating to their Manner of conferring Knighthoods, upon which, I ſhall not now proceed to enlarge: neither ſhall I enquire, whether our Kings, who ſucceeded theſe two Queens, did not, implicitly, follow the like Method of Proceedure, without reflecting, that ſuch Commiſſions might be originally owing to the Difference of their Sex, or to certain Reaſons of Decency, and Propriety, on that Account. A learned [m] Jeſuit, indeed, hath aſſerted, but upon what Authority I cannot conjecture, that *Elizabeth Queen of* England, *cauſed her ſelf to be armed on the Day of her Coronation, to be Sovereign of the Orders of Knighthood in* England; neither can I apprehend to what particular Rite, on the Occaſion, he intended to refer, as performed by Queen *Elizabeth*, perſonally, except that of putting on the Spurs, at the Time of her Coronation; the Propriety of which

---

k Appendix, Numb. 70.

l *Introduct. to the* Regiſter of the Garter, *p.* 34.

m Meneſtrier de la Chevalerie, *p.* 114. la Reine *Elizabeth* d'*Angleterre* ſe fit armer le jour de ſon couronnement pour eſtre Chef des Ordres de Chevalerie d'*Angleterre*.

Cere-

Ceremony, in this Caſe, I am not at leiſure here to examine.

From the Ceremonial, as it is deſcribed, of the Creation in the Reign of Queen *Mary*, we learn, that the Candidates went into the *Bath* in Linnen-Drawers, or Breeches, according to the Rules of an antient Formulary; that the Queen, with her own Hands, tied on their Swords; which yet was not the determinate Action, that impreſſed the Character of Knighthood; but the Earl of *Arundel* formally and effectually conferred it, when he executed his Commiſſion by giving the Acollade, or by laying his Hands upon the Shoulders of thoſe, who were deſigned to be honoured with this Degree; concerning which Practice, it will be neceſſary to add ſome explanatory Remarks in the Sequel.

As Queen *Elizabeth* was never married, the Reaſons of ſeveral publick Creations of Knights of the *Bath*, in former Reigns, did not ſubſiſt, during the Time of her Reign; which continuing above forty-five Years, ſhe (as it is [n] aſſerted) ſurvived all the Knights, [o] eleven in Number, upon whom this Honour had been conferred at her Coronation.

When King *James* was crowned, he promoted [p] ſixty-two Perſons to this Dignity; and in the ſecond Year

---

n G. 2. penes me, *p.* 221. 237.
o Appendix, Numb. 70. *p* Append. Numb. 71.

of

of his Reign, his younger Son, then in the [q] fourth Year of his Age, was [r] inveſted with this Degree, previous to his being created Duke of *York*.

It was allowed, that Knights of the *Bath* ought to have Precedency of all Knights-Batchilers, though in order of Time knighted before them in this Reign: But ſome Knights-Batchilers, formerly created, claimed a Right of preceding them: This Conteſt occaſioned a very elaborate and curious Treatiſe by [s] Mr. *Thinne*, *Lancaſter*-Herald, in anſwer to the Arguments alledged by the Knights-Batchilers, who inſiſted on that pretended Right; a Treatiſe that very well deſerves to be made publick; and according to the Argument of which, the Precedency was determined, as rightfully belonging to Knights of the *Bath*.

In the tenth Year of his Reign 1610, when his eldeſt Son *Henry*, was to be created Prince of *Wales*, there was a general Promotion made of the [t] Knights of the *Bath*, though this Prince himſelf, it is confeſſed, never had this Degree actually conferred on him; the Reaſon of which particular Exception to the general Rule, in reſpect to Princes, eſpecially to the firſt Prince of the Blood, moſt probably was, that Knighthood might have been conferred on him at the Time of his

---

q Appendix, Numb. 74.
r Appendix, Numb. 73.
ſ G. 2. penes me, *p.* 196, &c.
t Appendix, Numb. 75.

Baptiſm

Baptiſm, according to the "antient Cuſtom of *Scotland*, when "he was crowned and created Prince and "Great Steward of *Scotland*, Duke of *Roſay*, Earl of "*Carrick*, Lord of the *Ilis*, and Baron and * *Knight* of "*Renfrewe*."

And becauſe different Writers frequently remark the Rites obſerv'd in publick Solemnities, after a different Manner, ſo that we frequently find ſeveral Circumſtances particularly related by one of them, which are only in general tranſiently mentioned, or perhaps wholly omitted by another, I thought it might not be improper to refer the Reader to ſeveral [y] different Narratives, concerning that particular Solemnity, which is the Subject of our preſent Inquiry: But I have not now an opportunity to examine, whether the Order of Precedency, in the Return of this Proceſſion, as related by Mr. *Stow*, was perfectly agreeable to ancient Uſage.

Upon the Death of Prince *Henry*, his Brother *Charles* Duke of *York* (afterwards *Charles* the Firſt) was, with much Solemnity, created Prince of *Wales*, when ſeveral [z] Perſons were promoted to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, and there was the like Inveſtiture after his Suc-

---

u See Scotichron. l. 16. c. 6. *which was alſo the Practice in* France. Annotat. ſur l'Hiſt. de *Ch.* 6. *p.* 532, *and in* Burgundy, Pont. Heuter. l. 15. Rer. Burgund.

x Rymeri Fœd. Vol. 15, *p.* 263.

y Appendix, Numb. 75, 76, 77, 78.

z Appendix, Numb. 79.

ceſſion

ceſſion to the [a] Crown in *February* 1625. In the End of the Year 1637, he [b] appointed that his eldeſt Son the Prince, afterwards *Charles* King of *England*, the Second of that Name, ſhould, on the thirty-firſt Day of *May* following, be advanced to this Dignity, before his Election into the Fellowſhip of the *Garter*, and the [c] Regiſter of that Order mentions his Election on that very Day, but ſeems, indeed, to imply, that the Degree of Knight-Batchiler, only, was then conferred on him.

Soon afterward the Rebellion and Civil War broke out, putting all Things in a State of the utmoſt Diſorder: and although the very Title of the Formulary ſeems to imply, that this Degree of Knighthood was only to be confered in Time of Peace; yet, if what is aſſerted by a [d] *French* Writer of Character, upon Subjects of Nobility, Titles, and other Adjuncts of Honour, may be of any Authority, *James* Duke of *York*, afterward King of *England*, and the Second of that Name, was created Knight of the *Bath*. But he was certainly elected Companion of the *Garter* at *York*, on the 20th of *April* 1642, the Morning after the laſt annual Feſtival of St. *George*, celebrated before the Reſtoration of King *Charles* the Second, upon which that Monarch reſtored this Dignity of Knighthood of the *Bath*,

---

a Appendix, Numb. 80. *b* Appendix, Numb. 82.
c Append. Numb. 83.
d De la Roque Traite de la Nobleſſe, *p.* 351.

and, previouſly to his being crowned, [e] created ſixty-eight Knights of that Denomination.

III. The Dignity of this Degree may, in general, be concluded, from the pious, the beneficial, and other moſt excellent Ends of its Inſtitution, which have been already ſpecified: But that we may be able to form ſtill a more adequate, and diſtinct Judgement in the Caſe, it may be convenient to proceed upon a ſummary Conſideration of the following Particulars, concerning the ſolemn Times, Places, and Rites of conferring it, as well as Perſons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferred.

1. Our Monarchs, to do the greater Honour to this Degree, and which may ſerve to give us a more juſt Idea concerning the Dignity of it, have choſen the moſt publick, the moſt ſplendid, and joyful Occaſions for creating Knights of the *Bath*. This Act of Royal Grace hath been uſually diſplay'd upon the Coronation, and Marriage of our Kings; the Coronation of both Queens-Regents and Queens-Conſorts; the Birth, and Marriage of the Royal Iſſue, and their firſt Advancement to Honours; upon the deſigned Expeditions by our Kings againſt their foreign Enemies; upon Inſtallations into the *Moſt Noble Order of the* GARTER,

---

e Append. Numb. 84.

and

and when ſome grand Anniverſary-Feſtivals were celebrated.

2. The Place, where our Princes have conferred this Honour, was always inſeparably, and neceſſarily annexed, on that Occaſion, to the Palace, or within the Verge of the Court, where they reſided. And for the greater Solemnity of their Action in conferring it, and to ſhew the high Importance, and Deſign of it, the Ceremonies, ſo far as they reſpected the Ends of Religion, were ſolemnized in ſome Chappel or Church dedicated to the Honour, and approrpiated to the Worſhip of God.

3. But beſides theſe Circumſtances of Time, and Place, both which are, without doubt, deſignedly adapted to the Nature of the Action performed in them; the Manner of creating Knights of the *Bath*, hath ſeveral Things in it of more peculiar Conſideration, which may be proper ſtill to heighten our Eſteem for ſo antient, and honourable an Inſtitution.

The moral Signification of the ſeveral Rites uſed in creating Knights of the *Bath*, will be conſidered under a diſtinct Section in the Sequel. What I ſhall at preſent obſerve, concerning thoſe Rites, only relates to the Luſtre, the Importance, and Number of them. In the former reſpect, they participate with ſeveral Ceremonies immemorially uſed at the Coronation of our Kings; ſuch are the Bath, the Buskins, the Coif, the

Spurs, the Gloves, the Sword, the Oath, the Robes, *&c.* and probably from thence, as Circumſtances varied, theſe particular Uſages, in reference to the Creation of theſe Knights, did originally take their Riſe, and Direction; and conſequently, if any Objection ſhould therefore be pretended againſt them, ſuch Objection would be founded, not in their Want of Splendor, and Dignity, but rather in their exceeding on theſe Accounts.

The Importance of theſe Rites, is not leſs conſiderable. The perſonal Adminiſtration of the King, when he is preſent, or at leaſt his virtual Preſence under ſome delegated Authority, in aſſiſting at the Ceremonial by a Train of Actions, peculiar to his Royal Majeſty, neceſſarily contribute to augment the State and Grandeur of the Solemnity; and the great Officers of the Sovereign's Houſehold, received the Candidates to be created Knights of the *Bath*, at their firſt coming to the Court, who were afterwards ſucceſſively conducted through a Ceremonial, as we ſhall preſently ſee, of a various, and elaborate Proceſs.

I need not here proceed to ſhew, that in proportion, as greater Solemnities are uſed, in the Deſignation of a Perſon to any Office, the more Honour is always, upon a natural Preſumption, intended to be done to him, when ſuch Office is conferred. If this be a known Rule, in ordinary Promotions to any Civil Character, or Employment, it will hold ſtill ſtron-

ger,

ger, when ſuch Ceremonies are performed, which allude principally to thoſe, that have been celebrated, when Sovereign Princes were inveſted with the Rights of their Regalities; or ſuch, as have ſome viſible Relation to any ſacred, and inſtituted Rite, or Rites of religious Worſhip.

It may be proper therefore to take notice, that the greater Ceremony, from which the Knighthood of the *Bath* is denominated; and which, we muſt therefore ſuppoſe, was inſtituted with a peculiar Deſign of repreſenting the Dignity of it, hath the like Foundation, as to the moral Deſign of it, with the great, and ſacred Ordinance, by which we are initiated into the Faith, and Profeſſion of our Holy Religion. And it is not improbable, that as *Bathing* was intended, in the allegorical Conſtruction of it, to denote the inward Purgation and future Purity of the Mind; ſo, the Occaſion of applying it, in that Senſe, might be originally taken from a Conſideration of the baptiſmal Grace, and Efficacy; for the Origin of this civil Inſtitution may, for the Reaſon here mentioned, be much more probably derived from the Chriſtian Religion, than from the Luſtrations of the Heathens, with whom, it is yet allowed, *Bathing* was uſed, as one of their religious Solemnities.

The Diſtinction, indeed, or proper Character of all Things is known, and can only be known by the different Forms, under which Things appear: There is

no

no other Reaſon to be aſſigned of the different Degrees of Nobility, but from the different Manner, according to which Nobility was at firſt originally created, or hath been ſince ſucceſſively derived: Were it not for certain external Signatures, whereby Perſons and Things are known from other Perſons and Things, there could be no particular or diſtinct Knowledge, in either reſpect.

But of all Diſtinctions, none are more viſibly adapted, and univerſally underſtood to repreſent, or ſignify, what is intended by them, than thoſe, which are known by different Habits: It is therefore a received Maxim, "The Quality, and Dignity of the Perſon to be di-"ſtinguiſhed, is demonſtrated from the different Ha-"bit appropriated to him." And for this Reaſon, I may, on ſome future Occaſion, deſcend to a more particular Conſideration of the Robes, and other Marks of Diſtinction appropriated to Knights of the *Bath*, with ſome occaſional Remarks, concerning the particular Reaſons of ſuch Appropriations; contenting my ſelf, at preſent, by adding, that in the Church of *Wath* in *Yorkſhire*, upon the [f] Monument of Sir *John Norton*, created Knight of the *Bath* at the Marriage of Prince *Arthur*, and who died on the 28th of *Auguſt* 1520. He was repreſented by his Portraicture, having over his Armour, the Mantle, and Gloves hanging thereat, as

---

f G. 2. penes me, *p.* 214 *b.*

they

they were uſed at the Time of his Creation, and with a Croſs upon each Knee, which will be hereafter explained.

I ſhall only make tranſient Mention here, that theſe Robes were delivered by the King's ſpecial Warrants, at the Expence of the Crown, as an additional Circumſtance, to ſhew another conſiderable Character of Diſtinction, in reſpect to the Dignity, and Honour of this Degree; and I ſhall here incidentally take the Liberty of repeating, that as a Mark of a more honorary Impreſs upon this Act of Royal Grace, Knights of the *Bath* are ſummoned, in order to their Creation, by the King's Letters, or ſpecial Miſſive Writs immediately directed to them for that Purpoſe.

As the greater Solemnity of any particular Ceremony doth, according the Tenour of the aforegoing Argument, demonſtrate the greater Dignity of the Action, to which ſuch Ceremony is appropriated; ſo the Dignity of ſuch Action muſt neceſſarily be preſumed to ariſe in proportion, as a greater Number of ſolemn concurring Circumſtances is previouſly required to the Performance of it: The Rule in this Caſe, *The more Ceremony, the more State*, needs no Comment; eſpecially, where the Sovereign himſelf appears, or is underſtood to appear in all the Splendor, and Majeſty of the State-Royal: And therefore, though all Honour is ultimately derived from him, as the ſole Fountain of Honour; yet, every Dignity conferred by him, re-

ceives

ceives an additional Luſtre, as it is more expreſſive, or underſtood to be more expreſſive, of the Royal Favour, from the Circumſtances of conferring it.

I come now to make ſome Reflections upon the Manner and Act of conferring this Knighthood; and it will appear, there hath not been any Method, or Form of Rites in conferring Knighthood in any Age, or any Part of the World, wherein one Ceremony or other was uſed, which ſeparately conveyed Knighthood of a different Kind, that is not particularly, and conjunctly retained in conferring the Knighthood of the *Bath*; ſuch was the Inveſtiture with the Military Belt, the Cincture of the Sword, the Placing the Spurs, the Blow upon the Neck, the Acollade, with the Embracing, and Kiſs of Peace. Indeed, the Ceremony, by which Bannerets were created, in cutting the *Guidon* into the Form of a Square, could not, with any Propriety, be uſed in creating Knights of the *Bath*, as it was a Military Action always performed in Time of War, where Banners were diſplayed.

The Time to which I have confined my ſelf, doth not permit me to explain theſe ſeveral Methods of conveying Knighthood in diſtinct Ages, and Countries: But, to ſatisfy the Curioſity of thoſe, who may have a Deſire to know, what is the preciſe, and determinate Action, by which Knighthood of the *Bath* is ultimately, and compleatly conveyed, I ſhall take the preſent

preſent Occaſion to [g] repeat, that the Action which fully and finally impreſſes the Character of Knighthood in this Degree, is, the Blow given with the Hand upon the Neck or Shoulder. The Reader by the [b] Reference in the Margin, will find, that it hath been controverted between ſome foreign Writers, whether the Stroke, which impreſſed the Character of Knighthood, was heretofore given with a Sword, or by the bare Hand upon the Neck.

At the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, it was alſo uſual to make ſimple Knights, or Knights-Batchilers; which was done ſolely by the Stroke with a Sword, who are therefore, in ſome Ceremonials, termed Knights of the [a] *Sword*; and in others, Knights of the [b] *Carpet*. And it ſhould not be omitted, that Perſons of the greateſt Quality, and particularly a [c] Son of the King of *Portugal*, have taken upon them that Degree, on the Occaſion, when Knights of the *Bath* were created. And it is accordingly obſervable, that in the [d] Commiſſions iſſued for creating Knights of the *Bath*, previous to the later Coronations, there was a Clauſe, which not only gave Powers to that End, but *alſo to make, and ordain other Perſons Knights*.

---

g *See above.* p. 62. b Du Freſn, Gloſſ. v. Alapa Military.
a Claudius, C. 3. *in* Bibl. Cotton *in ſeveral Places.*
b *Uſually to be found in the Liſts.*
c Append. Numb. 43. d Append. Numb. 69. 72. *&c.*

The Knighthood of the *Bath* being more antient than any of the Religious, or Civil Military Orders, which were not founded before the [e] Twelfth Century; there are good Grounds to infer, that ſeveral Rites in thoſe Orders might, in ſucceeding Times, owe their Origin to this Inſtitution: And it might be a proper Subject of Enquiry, whether there is any one of theſe Orders that was not primarily formed upon the Model of it. As to the Religious Military Orders, it is evident, the Method of [a] admitting a Member into the Fraternity of the Knights-*Hoſpitallers*, one of the moſt antient Societies of this kind, had an apparent Aſſimilation with the Rites uſed in conſtituting a Knight of the *Bath*. And as the Ceremonies in creating Knights of the *Bath*, ſeem to be derived, in ſeveral Reſpects, from the Forms uſed in the Coronations of our Sovereigns; ſo ſeveral Princes, from this Inſtitution of Knighthood, have probably taken Hints, or certain exemplary Projects, upon which they have erected their Civil Military Orders. I ſhall not enter upon a particular Diſcuſſion, whether even the royal and magnificent Founder of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*, might not, in certain Inſtances, copy from this Precedent; but I ſhall confine my ſelf, at preſent, to what appears, at firſt ſight, to have been ſomewhat ſingular

[e] *In the Introd. to the Regiſter of the* Garter, *p.* 63.
[a] Menen. Dilic. Equeſtr. *p.* 72.

in

in the Ritual of this Degree of the *Bath*; namely, that every young Knight ſhould wear a white Silk Lace on his Left Shoulder, 'till it ſhould be taken off by the Hand of the Prince, or of ſome noble Lady, upon his having performed ſome brave and conſiderable Action: which might give Riſe to the Inſtitution of an Order of Knighthood, from the Badge proper to it, denominated the *Knot*; and this Knot was to be worn by the Companions [a] *untied*, till they had reſpectively done ſome ſuch ſignal Military Exploit.

In the former Ages of Gallantry, Knights obliged themſelves, by Vows, to perform *Feats of Arms*; and as a viſible Teſt of their Proweſs and Reſolution, made choice of ſome particular Enſign, a Bracelet about the Arm, a Chain about one of their Legs, or ſome other Device of like nature; firſt tied on with great Ceremony by the Hand of ſome beautiful Lady, and worn as the Signal of a Challenge to all Perſons, termed, in the Language of that Time, an *Empriſe*; as, upon the Performance of that Vow, the ſame Badge was likewiſe taken off by a Lady; which Action was called *Deliverer de ſa Empriſe*, and probably the Word *Enterprize* may owe its Etymology to this Practice.

---

[a] Hiſt. des Ordres Militaires, Amſterd. 1721. *Vol.* 3. *p.* 413, 414. Car. de Tellis in famil. Neapol. Hic jacet ſtrenuus Miles Collutius Bozzutus filius eius qui fuit de Societate Nodi, quem Nodum in campali bello victorioſe diſſolvit, & dictum Nodum religavit in Jeruſalem, qui obiit, 1370.

The taking this Silk Lace off the Knights of the *Bath* by a Lady, is the more obſervable, as to defend and protect Virgins and Widows was a Duty incumbent on them, by vertue of their Oath; and therefore it might not be improper, that they ſhould be deſpoiled of this Badge by ſo ſoft, and pleaſing a Violence. But, that the Ladies might ſtill do greater Honour to the Knights, who were the Objects of this Favour, Tilts and Tournaments were ordinarily appointed on the Solemnities, in which Knights of the *Bath* were created; and when they were to make a Trial of their Strength and Skill, which by the Monkiſh Writers, and Hiſtorians, are termed *Tyrocinia*, probatory Martial Exerciſes, wherein the Ladies were generally appointed Judges, and diſtributed honorary Rewards to the Combatants, according to the different Proofs of their Strength, Art, and Activity; the Diſcuſſion of which particular Articles would require too great a Compaſs in this Place, and therefore I muſt diſmiſs that Enquiry to another Opportunity; as alſo the Conſideration of the Badge granted to the Knights of the *Bath*, by which they are diſtinguiſh'd, being *Three Crowns*, the Arms aſcribed to King *Arthur*.

4. The other Method of making an Eſtimate concerning the Dignity of any Honour, is, from the Character of the Perſons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferr'd. Our Kings themſelves, who had not been knighted before their Acceſſion to the Sovereign Authority,

thority, have formally taken this Knighthood upon them, at the ſame time with the Crown; the Princes of the Blood Royal, foreign Princes, young Gentlemen of the higheſt Nobility, and firſt Diſtinction for their Birth, Quality, and perſonal Merit, have been the proper and ſelect Objects of this Royal Grace: Inſtances whereof may be found in the Appendix.

5. Concerning the allegorical Conſtruction of the Ceremonies uſed throughout the whole Proceſs of conferring this Dignity, and the myſtical Signification of the particular Make, and different Colours of the Materials, which are expreſly enjoin'd by the Formulary, whereof I promiſed to give ſome Account: I ſhall now curſorily remark, that the Humour of former Ages diſpoſed them to be very particular and prolix in the Explication of Forms. I have in [a] another place obſerved, how far the Rites relating to the Faſhion and Colour of the Enſigns uſed by the Knights of the *Garter*, have been moraliz'd; and in reference to the preſent Subject, ſhall take notice, that the moſt learned Mr. [b] *Selden*, for the Proof of *Bathing*, cites an old Book, deſcribing the Game of *Cheſſe*, tranſlated by *Caxton*, without aſſigning the Time when the Writer of that Book lived. A Tranſcript of which I have, in Deference to Mr. *Selden*'s Authority, inſerted from a [c] Tranſlation of it into the *French* Language; for

---

a Introd. to Regiſter of the Garter, *p.* 119, 120. *b Titles of Honour*, p. 456.
c Appendix, Numb. 87. *from a very fair MS. in the Hands of Mr.* Woodman *the Bookſeller.*

the

the Book is ſaid to have been written originally in *Latin*, and even this *French* Tranſlation being dedicated to *John* Duke of *Normandy*, eldeſt Son of *Philip* King of *France*, it follows, that it muſt have been made in the Interval between the 17th of *February*, 1331, when the Title of that Dutchy was conferr'd on him, and the Time of his Acceſſion to the Throne by the Demiſe of his Father on *Aug.* 22, 1350.

Bathing, from whence theſe Knights took their Appellation, repreſents the [a] Purgation of the Perſon bathed from Sin, and from all Kind of moral Impurity; as a Perſon, by Baptiſm, is ſanctified by a Principle of inward and ſpiritual Grace.

After Bathing, he is put into a new and clean Bed, to denote that perfect and ſedate Compoſure of Mind, with which a Courſe of virtuous Atchievements, in his new Military State, is to be finally rewarded.

After he hath for ſome time repoſed himſelf, Robes of Crimſon, or Red Tartarin were deliver'd to him; by which ſignificant Rite and Ornament he is inſtructed, that the Duty of his new Military Office requires, he ſhould, for the Service of the Chriſtian Religion, and for the Church, be ready to expoſe himſelf, whenever there may be juſt Occaſion, to the greateſt Diffi-

---

a *See* Appendix, Numb. 86, 87. *for the Proofs of theſe Allegories.* Cambden's Britan. *p.* 124. juxta vas balneatorium linteis opertum, in quo cum ſe Deo commendaverint, ſe abluunt, ut deinceps corpore, animoq; mundo eſſe admoneantur, *&c.*

culties and Dangers; though ſuch as may occaſion the ſhedding of his Blood: And theſe Robes are guarded, lined, or edged with white Silk, as emblematical of that immaculate Honour, which, in virtue of his Knighthood, he is inviolably obliged to preſerve and maintain.

The *Chauſſes ſemelles*, or Black Stockings ſoaled with Leather, are intended, as ſeveral other Materials of that Colour, in the Allegorical Conſtruction of them, for a Document of Humility; reminding him of his firſt Extraction, in reſpect to his mortal, and material Part, the Earth, out of which his Body was originally formed, and into which it muſt ſometime certainly be reſolved.

His Spurs denote his Ardour, Forwardneſs, and Activity in the Purſuit of Military Adventures, and Honour; and particularly, a ready and chearful Obedience to any ſuperior Command, ſuch as himſelf ſhould think reaſonable to be obey'd without Scruple or Regret, by thoſe, over whom he might be placed in any Degree of Authority; eſpecially, where Circumſtances would not admit Diſpute or Delay. And here I am to remark, that according to the Heraldick Syſtem, Spurs are carried, among other Trophies, at the Funeral of a Knight of the *Bath*; a Privilege not allowed to any other Perſon, under the Degree of a Baron, except only to Bannerets, and in later times, to Colonels of Horſe.

The

His white Girdle or Belt, repreſents the Vertue of Chaſtity, not in Oppoſition to Marriage, but to [a] impure and criminal Love, which Knights ought particularly to deteſt, as being the avow'd Guardians of Female Vertue and Honour.

The Ceremonial directs, that the Lords, who by the Sovereign's Appointment, ſhall put on the Spurs, do likewiſe make the Sign of the Croſs on each Knee of the Knight; and ſeveral Monuments of Knights of the *Bath* were lately, if not ſtill remaining, having [b] Croſſes placed in this manner upon their Knees.

The Sword is deſign'd as a Token of the Knights declaring open Defiance to the Devil, and of his reſolving to defend Religion, and the Duties of his Calling, with all Vigour and Conſtancy; particularly, to undertake the Protection and Defence of Poor Men againſt the Rich, and of weak Men againſt the Strong.

The Coife, white Covering, and white Hat upon the Head, imports, in the moral Deſign of it, that as a Knight is under indiſpenſible Obligations, in vertue of his Character and Function, to perform good and commendable Works; ſo he ought to preſerve a pure Conſcience before God, and ſhould be careful never to do, never to deſign any thing, for which his Mind may inwardly challenge or reproach him.

---

a *That of Sir* R. Willoughby, *Chief Juſtice in the Reign of* Edward I. *Of Sir* John Norton, *in* 1520. *in the Church of* Wath *in* Yorkſhire. *Of Sir* John Leigh *in* Lambeth, *&c.*

b *See* Du Freſne Gloſſ. v. Cingulo militari decorare.

The

The Blow on the Neck is intended, as a [a] Memorial to him, that he ought not to be inſenſible of any real Indignity, or Affront; that Honour is a tender Point; and no Impreſſions are ſooner felt, or ought to be longer retained, than thoſe whereby any Perſon ſuffers in his Character, as a Man of Honour.

This Account of the myſtick Signification, in giving the Blow, is agreeable to the Opinion, which hath prevailed in later Times. But ſince learned Men have made different Conjectures, about the Origin of it, as I have in another [b] Place obſerv'd, it may be convenient to propoſe ſome of them, which have been thought moſt ſpecious, to the Reader, that he may judge for himſelf, concerning the Propriety of them. There are Authors, who have derived this Blow from the Stroke given by the *Romans per vindictam*, with the Rod, upon any Perſon, in his receiving Manumiſſion: Others have deduced it from the Stroke, that the Biſhops frequently gave to Perſons confirmed by them: Others contend it was given upon the Creation of a Knight,

---

[a] Lambertus Ardenſis Hiſt. Com. Guiſn. qui vixit ſub *Philippo Auguſto*. In die Sancto Penteceſtes ei Militarem, non repercutiendus, dedit alapam, & militaribus eum in virum perfectum dedicavit ſacramentis. *In that Age, the Hiſtorians obſerv'd not the ſtrict Rules of Grammar; and it being evident from the whole Paſſage, that the Words,* non repercutiendus, *muſt refer to the new-created Knight; it may not be unreaſonable to gueſs, that the true Reading ought to be* non repercutiendo; *more eſpecially, ſince this Signification of that Stroke is remembred by other Writers. Thus in the* Appendix, Numb. 86. *at the Knighting of* Ilde-brand, *this Advice is particularly given him.*

[b] *Introduction to the* Regiſter of the Garter. *Other Authors have attributed it to the antient Adoptions* per arma.

with ſuch Violence, that he ſhould, by the ſenſible Impreſſion of it, be more powerfully, and permanently reminded of his Profeſſion; which Opinion appears conſonant to an antient Cuſtom of the *Romans*, tranſmitted from them to the *Germans*, of giving a Blow to a Perſon, who might be called upon to atteſt any Thing in Evidence, that had happened at the Time, when the Blow was given, or was for ſome ſpecial Reaſon to be particularly remembred; ſeveral Inſtances of which Practice are collected by [b] *Du Freſne*; to which may be added, it was cuſtomary in the [c] Northern Parts of *Europe*, when the Prieſt put the Ring upon the Bride's Finger, for thoſe, who aſſiſted at the Marriage, to give themſelves ſuch Strokes, the more effectually to remember the Solemnization of it. After ſuch Inſtances, I need not make an Apology for obſerving, there is, in many places, a Cuſtom of the like Nature obſerved in our annual Perambulations, in order to determine, and aſcertain to our reſpective Pariſhes, their true Bounds, and proper Claims of Right, by ſuch Treatment of young Perſons, as may ever after cauſe them to remember the Occaſion of it. Some Ceremonials of Knighthood preſuppoſe, indeed, another Reaſon for this Rite of the Blow, and ſay, it was appointed in [d] Memory of our Saviour's being buf-

---

[b] Gloſſ. v. auris, alapa. [c] Olaus Magnus, l. 14.
[d] *The Knighthood of* William *Earl of* Holland, 247. *in* Selden's *Titles of Honour*, Part 2. c. 1. § 60.

feted

feted, and ſmitten for our Offences. This Blow was probably given on the *Back* of the Shoulder, or Neck, that the Perſon, who received it, ſhould continually remember, that he ought never to give an Enemy the Opportunity, upon his flight from the Battle, of ſtriking him in the ſame Place. There is another Account, concerning the Origin of this Ceremony, which I ſhall barely mention, without any Remark; namely, that it was derived from the [f] Sword, when the Military Oath was taken by the Soldiers, under the *Roman* Emperor *Julian*, *Gladio cervicibus admoto*, mentioned by *Marcellinus* [g].

However this may be, yet, it ought not to be diſſembled, that not only the Monarchs of this Nation, but ſeveral foreign Princes have alſo, in former Ages, upon extraordinary Occaſions, conferred Knighthood by *Bathing*. And ſince we may receive ſeveral conſiderable Informations concerning the Rites, and Import of theſe Rites, from the Methods uſed by them, I thought proper to inſert ſome Precedents in the *Appendix* of ſuch foreign Creations. In 1350, Robes were prepared for the [h] Knighthood of the *Dauphin*, in which he was to perform his Vigils, with Coverings alſo for his Bed, and Coats of Arms to be ſet up in the Chamber, with ſeveral other Materials. The Method

---

e Caſeneuve v. Accollee.
f Caſſelii Variar. l. 1. c. 8.
g Lib. 21.
h Du Freſne, Gloſſ. *v.* Miles.

of conferring this Knighthood, by the King of *France*, upon *Lewis* King of *Sicily*, in *May* 1389, by *Bathing*, and other Ceremonies, corresponding with theſe uſed in this Realm, is ſo noble and ſolemn, that unleſs I had been confined ſo much to Time, I ought to have made a Verſion of it. This Practice was likewiſe upon grand Occaſions obſerved in *Italy*, whereof [i] Inſtances will be found in the *Appendix*, and which, in Truth, ſhould have been, but for the ſame Reſtraint, rendered in *Engliſh*: And as to *Spain*, [l] Mr. *Selden* hath already told us, what the antient Cuſtoms of that Nation were, in this Reſpect; and he takes it for granted, that our *Edward* the Firſt, was there knighted in this Manner: Several curious Obſervations might be drawn from theſe Narratives, which muſt be poſtponed to another Time.

The antient Ceremonial, both in the *French* and the old *Engliſh* Language, wherein the Rites of conferring this Degree are exhibited, will enable us to form the moſt clear and diſtinct Notions concerning the Reaſon, and End, upon which they were appointed. The *French* Ceremonial, indeed, hath been already printed by *Biſhe*, in his Notes upon *Upton*; but either the Copy, from which he tranſcribed, was faulty; or he was not ſo careful, and exact, as he ought to have been

---

i Appendix, Numb. 85.
k Appendix, Numb. 86.
l *Titles of Honour*, l. 2. c. 4. § 8.

in

in transcribing. [m] Mr. *Selden* hath referred us to a Formulary in the same Language, which he supposeth, was not more antient, than the Reign of *Henry* VII. It is probable, he did not meet with any Copy that was extant, though there were certainly several latent Copies of it, written before that Time. There are still some Copies remaining, which, by the Characters, seem to be of much greater Antiquity. [n] Mr. *Thynne*, a good Judge of such Matters, refers to one in his own Custody, written under the Reign of *Edward* III. and it hath been already hinted, that *Upton*, who wrote in the Reign of *Henry* VI. might, in all probability, refer to this Ceremonial, as extant in his Age. To which may be added, that the whole Process contained in this *French* Formulary, hath all the Characters, or proper Marks of a more early Composition. It corresponds exactly with the Preparations in the Accounts of the Wardrobe; and it is observable, that in the Article concerning the Fees due to the *Barber*, it specifies only such, which are to be paid by an Earl, Baron, Banneret, or Knight. The Fees, indeed, due from the Degree of Dukes, are therein omitted; which Omission, if it should not be allowed as a just Consequence, that this Instrument is more Ancient than

[m] *Titles of Honour*, l. 2. c. 5. n. 45.

[n] *There is one such Copy in the* Cotton Library, *and another in my Custody*, p. 35.

[o] *Advocate and Anti-Advocate*, MS.

[p] *See above*, p. 52.

the

the Erection of the Ducal Dignity in this Kingdom; yet, we may reasonably conclude, it was framed before the twenty-fifth of *Henry* VI, when the Fees of these respective Degrees were confirmed to the [q] *Barber*, and the Fees for a Duke particularly expressed, and determined to be in a duplicate Proportion to those of an Earl; and in several later Copies of this *French* Ceremonial, these Fees, due from a Duke, are mentioned. *Byssbe*, and *Dugdale* in his *Warwickshire*, have severally exhibited, in Sculpture, the Method of conferring this Degree; the original Drawings, from whence these Sculptures were taken, are now in the Possession of his Grace the Duke of *Montagu*: In them, several of the Esquires, as there represented, have, about their Necks, a Collar of white Roses, with a white Lyon pendent to it, which I have observed in another Place, was the Collar, and Badge used by the Domesticks of *Edward* the Fourth. But if *Henry* VII, permitted his Queen-Consort to give her Servants the Badge, used by her Father *Edward* IV, then this Sculpture may be the Picture referred to in the [s] *Appendix*, which represented the Manner of creating Knights of the *Bath*, at her Coronation.

I had a Design to add explanatory Notes upon the Ceremonial, towards discovering more fully the Nature

---

q Appendix, Numb. 45.
r *Introduction to the* Register of the Garter, p. 119.
s Append. Numb. 57.

of

of the Rites required, and the Meaning of ſeveral Terms therein contained; but the Printing of thoſe Notes, was not practicable within the Time limited for the Publication of this Eſſay. However, to expreſs in ſome Degree, my moſt grateful, and dutiful Acknowledgement to the Earl Marſhal, whoſe Fees are expreſſed in this Ceremonial, I cannot omit to remark, that theſe Fees do not depend upon the Authority of this Formulary, but are grounded upon an immemorial Uſage, and as ſuch, confirmed expreſsly by the Statute-Law [t] of this Realm, and frequently recited in the [u] Records, and by our [x] Hiſtorians.

Theſe are the Facts, which I have at preſent thought neceſſary to produce; and the Reader may be aſſured, they have been faithfully cited, and that due Care hath been uſed, not to miſrepreſent the Senſe, or Deſign of the Authors, or Inſtruments, from which they were taken: But as to the Obſervations, which have been occaſionally made upon thoſe Facts, though it is hoped, notwithſtanding the ſhort Time, wherein this imperfect Scheme of an Hiſtory hath been drawn up, I have not committed any material, and I am ſure, cannot be charged with any wilful Miſtake, in deducing

---

t Stat. Weſtm. 2. c. 42.

u See Prinn. *on 4th Inſt. p.* 74. *and at the Coronation of Queen* Alianor, *the red Book of the* Exchequer *informs us, that* Gilbert *Earl of* Strigul, *then Marſhal,* Recepit autem de quolibet Barone facto milite a Rege, & quolibet Comite ea die Palfridum cum ſella.

x See the Claim in Mat. Paris, *under* 35 Hen. 3. *p.* 830.

them;

them; yet, if it should, in Time future, appear, that I have really drawn any false, or even precarious Inference on any Account, from the Authorities, on which my Arguments have been founded, I desire to reserve a Liberty to my self of correcting such Error, and of propoling the Matter in Question in a more true and convenient Light.

COLLECTIONS

COLLECTION
OF
AUTHORITIES
Referred to in the
INTRODUCTION.

NUMB. I.

Malmsbury l. 2. c. vi. de Regibus.

ANNO Dom. 871. Nam & avus ejus *Alfredus* proſperum ei regnum olim imprecatus fuerat, videns & gratioſe complexus ſpeciei ſpectatæ puerum, & geſtuum elegantiam; quem etiam præmature militem fecerat, donatum Chlamyde coccinea, gemmato baltheo, enſe *Saxonico* cum vagina aurea.

NUMB. II.

Ingulf. inter Rer. *Anglic.* Script. *Lond.* 1596, f. 512. *b.*

Quoniam *Anglorum* erat conſuetudo, quod qui militiæ legitimæ conſecrandus eſſet, veſpere præcedente diem ſuæ conſecrationis ad Epiſcopum, Abbatem, Monachum, vel Sacerdotem aliquem contritus, & compunctus de omnibus ſuis peccatis confeſſionem faceret, & abſolutus, orationibus & devotionibus & afflictionibus deditus, in Eccleſia pernoctaret, in craſtino quoq; miſſam auditurus, gladium ſuper altare offerret, & poſt Evangelium Sacerdos benedictum gladium collo militis cum benedictione imponeret, & communicatus ad eandem miſſam ſacris

Chriſti myſteriis denuo miles legitimus permaneret. Hanc conſecrandi militis conſuetudinem *Normanni* abominantes non militem legitimum talem tenebant, ſed ſocordem equitem, & Quiritem degenerem deputabant.

NUMB. III.

Joh. Monachi Majoris-Monaſterii vita Gaufr. *Ducis* Norman. *l.* 1. *ad A. D.* 1127.

Gaufredus, Fulconis Comitis *Andegavorum*, poſt *Jeroſolymorum* Regis, filius, adoleſcentiæ primævo flore vernans, quindecim annorum factus eſt. *Henricus* primus Rex *Anglorum* unicam ei filiam lege Connubii jungere affectabat. Regia voluntas *Fulconi* in petitionibus ſuis innoteſcit. Ipſe Regis petitionem effectui ſe mancipaturum gratulanter promiſit. Datur utrinque fides, & res ſacramentis firmata, omnem dubietatis ſcrupulum tollit. Ex præcepto inſuper Regis exactum eſt a Comite, ut filium ſuum, nondum militem, ad ipſam imminentem Pentecoſtem *Rothomagum* honorifice mitteret, ubi ibidem cum *coæquævis* arma ſuſcepturus, *regaliis gaudiis* intereſſet. Nulla in his obtinendis fuit difficultas: Juſta enim petitio facilem meretur aſſenſum. Ex Imperio itaq; Patris, Regis Gener futurus, cum *quinq; Baronibus*, multo etiam ſtipatus milite, *Rothomagum* dirigitur. Rex adoleſcentem multiplici affatur alloquio, multa ei proponens, ut ex mutua confabulatione reſpondentis Prudentiam experiretur. Tota dies illa in gaudio & exultatione expenditur. Illuceſcente die altera, *Balneorum uſus, uti tyrocinii ſuſcipiendi conſuetudo expoſtulat*, paratus eſt. Poſt corporis ablutionem aſcendens de *Balneorum* lavacro, byſſo retorta ad carnem induitur, cyclade auro texta ſuperveſtitur, chlamide conchilii & muricis ſanguine tincta tegitur, caligis holoſericis calciatur, pedes ejus ſotularibus in ſuperficie leunculos aureos habentibus muniuntur. Talibus ornamentis decoratus regius Gener, adductus eſt miri decoris equus. Induitur lorica incomparabili, quæ maculis duplicibus intexta, nullius lanceæ ictibus transforabilis haberetur. Calciatus eſt caligis ferreis ex maculis itidem duplicibus compactis. Calcaribus aureis pedes ejus adſtricti ſunt. Clypeus leunculos aureos imaginarios habens collo ejus ſuſpenditur. Impoſita eſt capiti ejus caſſis multo lapide pretioſo relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius enſe incidi, vel falſificari valeret. Allata eſt haſta fraxinea ferrum *Pictavenſe* prætendens. Ad ultimum allatus eſt ei enſis de theſauro regio ab antiquo ibidem ſignatus, in quo fabri-

fabricando fabrorum ſuperlativus *Galanus* multa opera, & ſtudio deſudavit. Taliter ergo armatus tyro noſter, novus militiæ poſtmodum flos futurus, mira agilitate in equum proſilit. Quid plura? Dies illa *tyrocinii* honori, & gaudio dicata, tota in *ludi bellici exercitio*, & procurandis ſplendide corporibus elapſa eſt. Septem ex integro dies apud Regem *tyrocinii* celebre gaudium continuavit.

NUMB. IV.

Joh. Saliſb. de nugis Curial. *l.* 6. *c.* x. Inolevit conſuetudo ſolempnis, ut ea ipſa die, qua quiſque militari cingulo decoratur, Eccleſiam ſolempniter adeat, gladioque ſuper altare poſito, & oblato, quaſi celebri profeſſione facta, ſeipſum obſequio Altaris devoveat, & gladii, id eſt officii ſui jugem Deo ſpondeat famulatum.

Ibid. *c.* xiii. Sunt autem plurimi, qui malorum clamore operum quando Militiæ conſecrandi cingulum altari obtulerunt, videntur proteſtari ſe eo tunc animo acceſſiſſe, ut altari, & miniſtris ejus, ſed & Deo, qui ibi colitur, bellum denuntiarent.

NUMB. V.

Baldewino Adhidiac. *Norverb.* Honor cinguli militaris, quo me ad Apoſtolorum limina properantem, tu inde rediens decorafti in urbe Senarum *&c.* ſi me mutato nomine in *Italia* militare non obſtupeſcas, ſed imputa tibi, qui me in *Italia* donaſti cingulo militari *&c.* Epiſt. 219.

NUMB. VI.

Petri Bleſenſ. Epiſt. 94. Olim ſe juramenti vinculo milites obligabant, quod ſtarent pro Reipub. ſtatu, quod in acie non fugerent, & quod vitæ propriæ utilitatem publicam perhaberent. Sed & hodie *Tirones* enſes ſuos percipiunt de altari, ut profiteantur ſe filios Eccleſiæ, atq; ad honorem ſacerdotii, ac tuitionem pauperum, ad vindictam malefactorum, & patriæ liberationem ſe gladium accepiſſe; porro res in Contrarium verſa eſt, nam ex quo hodie militari cingulo decorantur, ſtatim inſurgunt in Chriſtos Domini, & deſæviunt in patrimonium Crucifixi.

NUMB. VII.

Magn. Rot. 6 *Joh. rot.* 16. Et pro tribus robis de *Scarletto* & tribus de *viridi* & ii Baldekinis & i *culcitra* & aliis neceſſariis ad faciendum unum militem xxxiii *l.*

Clauſ. 6. Joh. m. 20 *d. Johannes* &c. Vicecomiti *Southampton* Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod facias habere *Thomæ Sturmy* valletto noſtro unam robam de ſcarletto cum quadam penula de byſſis, & aliam robam de viridi vel burnetta, & unam ſellam, & unum par loianorum, & capam ad pluviam, & unam culcitram, & unum par lintheorum, quando ipſe fiet miles. Et quod in hiis poſueris, computabitur tibi ad Scaccarium. Teſte meipſo apud *Briſtoll* xviii die *Julii* anno regni noſtri ſexto.

NUMB. VIII.

Magn. Rot. xi. *Joh. rot.* i.

Et pro tribus robis de Serico & tribus de viridi cum biſis, & tribus coopertoriis, & tribus *culcitris*, & tribus ſellis cum loris, & tribus paribus lintheorum, & tribus paribus *camiſiarum*, & braccarum, & pro aliis minutis apparatibus ad faciendos milites xxi *l.* x *s.* ii *d.*

NUMB. IX.

Clauſ. 32 *H.* 3. *m.* 3. Mandatum eſt *Willimo* de *Pleſſetis*, quod mittat unam robam de ſerico, duas robas de panno, *capam*, *lectum*, & alia neceſſaria ad unum militem faciendum *&c.* 3 *Sept.*

Clauſ. 33 *H.* 3. *m.* 6. Mandatum eſt *Willimo* de *Pleſſetis*, quod *Stephano* de *Salinis* faciat habere *lectum* pulchrum, & tria paria robarum decentium, & alia neceſſaria, quæ ſunt de officio veſtro ad ſe militem faciendum *&c.* 26 *Julii.*

Clauſ. 34 *H.* 4. *m.* 19. Mandatum eſt *Joh.* de *Somercot* & *Rogero Ciſſori*, quod *Johanni* de *Simnevil*, qui inſtanti feſto natalis Domini cingulo militiæ decorabitur, habere faciant quandam robam de Scarletta cum penula de Biſſis, vel de minuto vario, & *lectum* militarem, ſicut alii novi milites noſtri habere conſueverunt *&c.* 26 *Nov.*

Clauſ. 39 H. 3. m. 11. *There are Mandates to deliver to* Mathew Hanybal, quem Rex faciet novum militem, *four Hogſheads of Wine, and four Palfreys, and another to deliver him* Robam de Scarletto cum minuto vario, & aliam capam, & robas ſibi convenientes & pulchrum *lectum* cum *matricio*, *coopertorio*, & culcitr. cum pannis ad aurum *&c.*

NUMB. X.

Comp. Garder. 31 E. i.

Petro de la Foix facto militi ad cointeſium ſuum furrand. i pen. qr.

Eidem

Eidem ad unam robam vii uln. bl. i furr. popl. i Capuc. Men.
Eidem ad aliam robam vii uln. virid. i furr. popl.
Eidem ad capam v uln.
Eidem pro *lecto* ſuo x ulnas canabi.
Eidem ad lintheamina xx uln. telæ.
Eidem ad *culcitram* ſuam lineand. x uln. carde.
Eidem ad *matriciam* x uln.

Conſimilia allocantur

Joh. de Horne tanquam Baneretto.
Rob. de Ufford tanquam Baneretto.
Joh. de Felton, Comme a Bacheler.
Richo de ----- tanquam ſimplici militi.
Joh. de Dagworth tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Rich. de Stratten tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Johanni de Cormailles tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Will. de Botecourt tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Joh. de Berkle tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Joh. Giffard tanquam ſimplici Baneretto.
Ph. de Nevill tanquam Baneretto.

Numb. XI.

Comp. Garder. 33. *E.* 1.

Pagano Tibetot ad cointeſium i pen. min.
Eidem ad i rob. xii uln. i fur. i capuc. Men. i fur——
Eidem ad aliam robam. xii. uln. ii. furr. gr. capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad *Capam* v. uln.

Conſimilia.

Georgio de Thorpe, *Johanni de Nevil*,
Johanni Douvedale, *Thomæ de Latimer.*

Rich. Grey facto militi ad coynteſium ſuum i pen. m. v.
Eidem ad primam robam ſuam xi uln. i fur. min. i fur. gr. i capuc. men.
Eidem ad aliam robam ſuam xi uln. i furr. gr. i furr. popl. i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad *Coopertorium* ſuum ad xii. uln. i coopertorium. m. v.
Eidem ad *capam ſuam*. v. uln.

Conſimilia.

Petro Skerk, *Joh. le Strange*
Will. Clerk, *Hugoni de Croſte*,
Joh. de Watervill, *Barth. Deynevill.*

Numb.

NUMB. XII.

Matth. Weſtm. A. D. 1306. p. 458. Ad augmentandum igitur profectionem ſuam in *Scotiam* fecit Rex per *Angliam* publice proclamari, ut quotquot tenerentur fieri milites ſucceſſione paterna, & qui haberent unde militarent, adeſſent apud *Weſtmonaſterium* in feſto *Pentecoſtes*, admiſſuri ſinguli omnem ornatum militarem præter Equitaturam, de regia Garderoba. Confluentibus itaq; CCC juvenibus, filijs Comitum, Baronum, & Militum, diſtribuebantur purpura, byſſus, ſyndones, cyclades auro textæ, effluentiſſime, prout cuiq; competebat. Et quia palatium regale, etſi amplum, tamen ad tot occurrentium turbam anguſtum fuit, apud *Novum Templum Londini*, ſucciſis lignis pomiferis, proſtratis muris, erexerunt papiliones & tentoria, quo tyrones deauratis veſtibus ſe ſinguli decorarent. Ipſa quoq; nocte in Templo prædicti *Tyrones*, quotquot poterat capere locus ille, ſuas *vigilias* faciebant. ſed Princeps *Walliæ* præcepto Regis Patris ſui cum præcelſis tyronibus fecit *vigilias* ſuas in Eccleſia *Weſtmonaſterienſi*. Ibi enim tantus clangor tubarum, & tibicinum, & exaltatio vocum præ gaudio extiterat clamantium, quod conventus de Choro ad Chorum non audiretur jubilatio. Die autem craſtino cinxit Rex filium ſuum baltheo militari in palatio ſuo, & dedit ei Ducatum *Aquitaniæ*. Princeps ergo factus miles, perrexit in Eccleſiam *Weſtmon.* ut conſocios ſuos militari gloria pariter venuſtaret. Porro tanta erat preſſura gentium ante magnum Altare, quod duo milites morerentur, quamplures ſincopizarent, etiam cum quilibet *ad minus tres milites* ad ſe ducendum & tuendum haberet: Princeps autem propter turbam comprimentem non ſecus, ſed ſuper magnum altare diviſa turba per dextrarios bellicoſos ſocios ſuos cinxit. Tunc allati ſunt in pompatica gloria duo *Cigni* vel *Olores* ante Regem phalerati retibus aureis & fiſtulis deauratis deſiderabile ſpectaculum intuentibus; Quibus viſis Rex votum vovit Deo Cœli, & Cygnis ſe proficiſci in Scotiam, *&c.*

NUMB. XIII.

Computus Joh. de Drokenesford Cuſtodis Garder. 34. *E.* 1.

Domino *Edwardo Principi Walliæ* facto militi ad coynteſium ſuum furrurand. i pen. ermyn.

Eidem ad primam robam ſuam ſibi faciendam xv uln. iii uln. furr. dim. min. ii capuc. men.

Eidem

Eidem ad ſecundam robam ſuam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad tertiam robam ſuam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad quartam robam ſuam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad quintam robam ſuam xv uln. iii uln. fur. dim. men. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad Sixtam robam ſibi faciendam xv. uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.
Eidem ad ſeptimam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.
Eidem ad octavam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.
Eidem ad coopertorium pro *primo lecto* ſuo i coopertor. m. v.
Eidem ad unum coverchief de velvet furr. pro *eodem lecto* i coverch. Ermyn.
Eidem ad ſecundum *lectum* ad coopertorium i coopert. m. v.
Eidem ad perfuland. furr. robarum ſuarum vi capuc. m. v.
Eidem pro *Balneo* ſuo cooperiendo vi uln.
Joh. de Warenna facto militi ad coynteſium ſuum furr. i pen. m. v.
Eidem ad primam robam ſuam ſibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad aliam ſibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.
Eidem ad capam ſibi faciendam v ulnas.

Conſimilia.

Joh. de Arundell, *Thomæ de Greyly*, &c.

Brevia penes Rem. Regis in ſcaccario 34. *Edw.* I.

Edward par la grace de Dieu Roi d'*Engleterre*, Seigneur d'*Irlaunde*, & Duc d'*Aquitaine* a noſtre chier Clerke *John de Drokenesford* Gardein de Garderobe ſaluz. Vous mandouns, que a noſtre cheir Vallet *Thomas de Veer*, qui ſeira fait noveau Chevalier en la Compagne *Edward* noſtre chier fitz a ceſte prochein feſte de Pentecoſte, facez avoir convenant attir oue coverture, ſicome afhiert a ſon Eſtate, comme pur celi qu'eſt noſtre nourry, & fitz de Conte. Done ſour noſtre prive ſeal a Wolueſeye le iii jour de May l'an de noſtre regne xxxiiii.

Edvardus Dei gratia Rex *Angliæ*, Dominus *Hiberniæ*, & Dux *Aquitaniæ* dilecto nobis *Radulfo de Stokes* clerico magnæ Garderobæ noſtræ ſalutem; Mandamus vobis, quod dilecto nobis *Thomæ Bardolf* tanquam *Banneretto* decentem apparatum

paratum pro ſe novo milite faciendo, ad feſtum *Pentecoſtes* prox. futurum, in comitiva *Edvardi* filii noſtri chariſſimi habere de dono noſtro faciatis, & Nos vobis inde in compoto veſtro debitam allocationem habere faciamus. Datum ſub privato Sigillo noſtro apud *Wolveſeye* iii die *Maii* anno regni noſtri xxxiv.

NUMB. XIV.

G. 2. penes me p. 70.

34 *Ed.* I. xi Kal. *Junii* Edward *Prince of* Wales *was made Knight at* Weſtminſter *on the day of* Pentecoſt, *and then were made* 303 *Knights, and the Erles of* Hertford *and* Lincoln *put on the Spurs of the Knights.*

NUMB. XV.

Selden's *Titles of Honour p.* 642.

Anno MCCCXVI Dominus *Rich.* de *Rodney* factus fuit miles apud *Keynſham* die tranſlationis Sancti *Thomæ* Martyris in præſentia Domini *Almarici* Comitis de *Pembroch*, qui cinxit eum gladio, & Dominus *Mauritius* de *Berkley* ſuper pedem dextrum poſuit unum *calcar*, & Dominus *Bartholomeus* de *Badileſmere* poſuit aliud ſuper pedem ſiniſtrum in aula, & hoc facto receſſit cum honore.

NUMB. XVI.

Comp. Thomæ *de* Ufflete *Clerici Proviſoris Garder.* 16 E. 2.

novi Milites.

Henrico Percy ad apparatum ſuum pro Militia a Domino Rege ſuſcipienda apud *Ebor.* x die *Sept. viz.* ad tunicam & *capam intus vigilandum* de panno mixto de - - - vii uln.

Eidem ad Cointeſium ſuum i pen. gr. v. de ix tiris.

Eidem ad unam robam ſibi faciendam de panno ſcarletto xi uln. i furr. men. de vii tiris i furr. qr. v. i capuc. men. pur.

Eidem ad aliam robam ſibi faciendam de panno mixto in grano xi uln. ii uln. qr. v. i capuc. men. de iii tiris.

Johanni de la Haye ad apparatum ſuum pro militia ſua a Domino Rege ſuſcipienda primo die *Junii* viz. ad coynteſium ſuum i pen. popl. de ix tiris.

Eidem ad *capam ſuam intus vigilandum* de panno color. iv uln. dim.

Eidem ad unam robam ſibi faciendum de panno viridi de - - - x uln. dim. ii furr. qr. v. de viii tiris.

Eidem

Eidem ad aliam robam ſibi faciendam de bl. azur. x uln. dim. ii furr. popl. de viii tiris ii capuc. min. de iii tiris.

Conſimil. apparatum habuerunt

Will. de Dounton, *Henri. Tilly*,
Will. Waykam, *Henr. Longechamp*,
Remondus Durant } cum ſocio ſuo
tanquam Banerettus } tanquam ſimplex miles.

Numb. XVII.

Comput. de anno 18. *E.* 2.

Conſimilem apparatum habuerunt infra ſcripti ad militiam ſuam ſuſcipiendam, *viz.*

Hugo de Poyntz tanquam Banerettus de novo milite a Domino Rege faciendo. x *Aug.*

Petrus de Boxſtede de novo milite faciendo xiii *Aug.* per manus Henrici de Boxſtede Germani ſui.

Ric. Pyke de novo milite faciendo per manus Regis proprias Londini.

Thomas de Marlebergh,
Petrus de la Horſe, 24 Oct.
Hugo de Nevil, 2 Apr.
Hugo de Pleſis tanquam Banerettus per manus Regis proprias ultimo Octobris.

Numb. XVIII.

Placita coram Domino Rege de termino Sti. *Hilar.* 18. *E.* 2. rot. xxxiiii Judicium contra *Andream de Harcla*

Que vous ſoietz degrade,
qe vous perdetz noun de Counte pur vous, & pur vous heirs a touts jours,
qe vous ſoietz deceynt del Eſpee,
qe vous Eſporeuns d'orrees ſoient coupez de Talouns.

Numb. XIX.

Comput. Thomæ de Uſſete Clerici Proviſoris magnæ Garderobæ 19 *E.* 2.

Jacobo Botiller de *Hibernia* ad apparatum ſuum pro ſe novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto, London ultimo die menſis Martij anno præſenti xix, *viz.* de panno in ſerico de Tartarin cum rad. aur. ad apparamenta ſua vi uln. i pann. men. de ix tiris.

Eidem ad i tunicam & i capam pro *vigilia ſua* de panno color. murray de —— vi uln.

Eidem ad robam de panno ſcarleto xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. gr. v. de vii tiris: i capuc. men. pur.

Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi de Duaco xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. . . . de vii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iiii tiris.

Eidem ad i culcitram pro *lecto* ſuo de panno ad aur. in ſerico de Luka ii pann.

Eidem ad eandem culcitram liniandam i pec. Cindon & i pec. Card.

Eidem ad i matraciam pro *lecto* ſuo Cindone afforciato i pec.

Eidem ad idem de Carde i pec.

Eidem ad i par lintheaminum pro *lecto* ſuo de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad Canevaciam pro eodem *lecto* ſuo de canabo xii uln.

Conſimilem apparatum habuerunt,

Will. de Monteacuto pro ſe novo milite faciendo, tanquam pro Banneretto per manus *Thomæ de Langford* London 19 Apr.

Ebulo le Strange, &c. tanquam pro Baneretto.

Rogerus de Bourne,
Rog. Only,
Matth. fil. Herberti,
Joh. de Gras,
Thomas Weſt,
Ric. ap Griffith,
Tho. de Weſton,
Nich. de Cantelou,
Tho. de Gouſhull.
Henr. de Harnhall.
Adam de Moleleſton,
Walt. de Fauconberge,
Willus de Albemarle,
Joh. de Kirketon,
Henr. le Vavaſour,
Roger Deyncourt,
Will. Peverell.

Numb. XX.

Comp. Thomæ Uflete 20 *Ed.* 2.

Joh. de Bon - - - Conſanguineo Regis ad apparatum ſuum pro militia, tanquam pro *Comite* ſuſcipienda, ad mandatum Dom. *Edw.* illuſtris Regis *Angliæ* primogeniti *London* xx die *Januarij* anno præſenti xx°. *viz.* ad i tunicam & unam capam de panno Brun. mixto vi uln. dim.

Eidem ad coopertorium *lecti* ſui pann. bl. azur. xii uln.

Eidem

Eidem ad culcitram *lecti* ſui de Cindone afforc. iii pec. dim.

Eidem ad matrac. *lecti* ſui de Cindone conſimili ii pec. dim.

Eidem ad par lintheam. de tela de ——— xxx uln.

Eidem ad i canevac. pro *lecto* ſuo iiii tapet.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno ad aur. in ſerico dyaſpiri. ii pan. i pan. men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i rob. de panno ſcarlet xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.

Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.

Conſimiles liberaturas pro apparatibus ſuis habuerunt,

Edm. de Mortuomari,
Rog. de Mortuomari,
Galfr. de Mortuomari.

} quilibet eorum tanquam pro Banerett.

Gerardo de la Bret ad apparatum ſuum pro militia tanquam pro Baneret. a Rege ſuſcipiend. *viz.*

Ad i tunicam & i capam de pann. Brunn. mixto vi uln.

Eidem ad culcitram *lecti* ſui de pann. ad aur. in ſerico dyaſpryn. ii pann.

Eidem ad linuram ejuſdem de Cindone afforciato i pec.

Eidem ad matraciam ſuam de Cindone afforc. i pec.

Eidem ad borduram ejuſdem de Carde i pec.

Eidem ad lintheamina ſua de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad canevac. ſuam de Canabo xii uln.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pann. men. de iiii tiris.

Eidem ad i rob. de pann. ſcarlet xi uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iiii tiris.

Conſimiles apparatus habuerunt ſubſcripti,

Hugo. de Courtenaye,
Rad. de Wylinton,
Rad. Daubeneye,
Joh. de Wyloughby,
Edw. Stradling,
Rad. Baro. de Stafford,
Joh. de Moeles,
Will. de Percy,
Gerardus de Inſula,
Petrus Breton,
Rog. le Straunge,
Ernom. de Poters,
Joh. de Nevilla & alii quatuor.

viz. Singuli eorum tanquam pro Banerett.

Will. de Wyloughby ad apparatum ſuum pro militia ſua ſuſcipienda per mandatum conſimile, *viz.*

Ad capam ſuam de pann. Brun. mixto iiii uln.

Eidem ad culcitram *lecti* ſui de pann. ad aur. in canabo ii pann.

Eidem ad matraciam ſuam, & ad bordur. culcitræ ſuæ de Carde ii pec.

Eidem ad lintheam. ſua de tela linea Angl. xxiii. uln.

Eidem ad canevac. ſuam de canabo x uln.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno de Tart. uln. i pann. gr. v.

Eidem ad robas ſuas de panno viridi & blu azur. xxi uln. ii fur. popl. ii furr. ſtrandt. ii capuc. men. de iii tiris.

Conſimiles liberationes ad apparatus ſuos pro militia ſua adtunc ſuſcipienda habuerunt ſubſcripti, *viz.*

Johes de Ralee,
Rad. de Bloyou,
Oto Botetourt,
Will. Daubeney,
Rob. Brente,
Joh. de Cheruſtone,
Jo. de Sutton,
Alex. de Cobledyl,
Sayerus de Rocheford,
Will. Cheney,
Regin. de la Mare,
Rob. de Breus,
Sim. fil. Radulphi,
Hugo Abetot,
Jo. de Rous,
Will. D'eureus,
Jo. de Hotham.

Numb. XXI.

Comput. Garder. primo Ed. 3.

Nich. de *Wrygbt* Ciſſori Domini Regis ad i rob. de iv garniament. pro militia, & Coronatione ejuſdem Dom. Regis facienda 25 *Januarii* anno regni primo. *Then follow ſeveral Particulars touching this Robe, and afterwards, under the Title* pro militia Regis,

Eidem xxvi die *Januarii* ad *balneum* Regis pro militia ſua cooperienda de pann. ad aurum dyaſpin. iiii pann.

Eidem eodem die ad tria lintheamenta pro eiſdem *balneis* cooperiendis & pro pedibus Regis tergendis de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. & i capam pro vigilia Regis de panno Perſico in grano vi uln. & dim.

Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. i capam & i mantell. pro apparamento Regis de velveto purpureo iiii pec. iii uln.

Eidem eodem die ad eandem tunicam & manicas ejuſdem furrand. i furr. griſ. i capuc. griſ.

Eidem eodem die ad dictum mantellum furrand. de pann. men. pur. i penul. men. pur.

Ornatus

Ornatus Cameræ Regis ante Militiam.

Item in apparatu & ornamento Cameræ Regis in nocte, antequam ſuſcepiſſet ordinem militarem *viz.* in palatio ſuo apud *Weſtm.* ultimo die *Januarii* anno eodem de tapetis rubeis cum ſcutis in corner. de Armis Regis v tapeta.

Eodem die Quiſſins de Sanutello novo pro Capella Regis iii Quiſſins.

De Quiſſin Sanutell. pro eadem Camera poſt Militiam Regis vi.

De Banker. pro eadem Camera ornanda de diverſis ſectis *viz.* iiii rub. cum - - - virid. i virid. & iiii murr. & bluèt ix Banker.

Item de Banker pro eadem Camera ornanda de ſecta prædictorum tapetum cum ſcutis in corner. de Armis Regis iv Banker.

NUMB. XXII.

Comp. Will. *la* Zouche *Clerici Proviſoris Garderobæ* 3 *E.* 3.

Novi Milites.

Ad apparatus pro *Joh.* de *Cambridge* novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto per literam de privato ſigillo *London* 22 *Oct.* viz.

Ad tunicam & capam intus vigilandum de panno blu de Lovan. vi uln.

Eidem ad quoynteſium ſuum de panno de Tart. vi uln. i pec. men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad duas robas de panno - - - - & virid. xxiii uln. ii fur. gr. de 7 tiris, i capuc. men. dim. pur. de xxxii ventr. & i fur. popl. i fur. Strandt. i capuc. men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad culcitram lecti ſui de pann. ad aur. dyaſpin ii pann.

Eidem ad Carde liniand. de ſindone afforc. i pec.

Eidem pro bordura ejuſdem de Carda i pec.

Eidem ad Matrac. ſuam de ſynd. afforc. i pec. de Carda ad idem i pec.

Eidem ad lintheamenta ſua de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad unam Canevac. pro eodem lecto de Canabo xii uln.

Conſimilem apparatum habuerunt ad novam militiam ſuam ſubſcripti, *viz.*

Edwardus le Blound	*Rich. de Baicus*
Petrus de Thorntone	*Banco de Lere Lumbardus.*

John de Cantabrig *was the King's Serjeant in* 4 E. 3. *and in this* 3*d Year a Juſtice* Itinerant.

NUMB.

Numb. XXIII.

Comp. Nich. *de la* Zouche *anno quarto* Ed. 3.

Liberationes novorum Militum.

Thomæ de *Bradſtan* ad apparatum ſuum pro ſe novo milite, tanquam Banneretto, faciendo, *viz.*

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno col. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quantaſium ſuum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pen. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i robam de iv garner. de panno ſcarl. long. x uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris, i capuc. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem ad alteram ſuam de tot garn. de panno bl. longo x uln. ii furr. gr. v. i cap. Men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad lectum ſuum *viz.* ad i culcitram de panno ad aur. in ſerico Dyaſpyn. ii panni

Eidem ad idem de ſindone afforc ii pec.

Eidem ad matracium ſuum de Carda ii pec.

Eidem ad unum par lintheaminum pro eodem lecto de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad i canevac. de canabo xii uln.

Eidem *Thomæ* ultra hæc, ut de dono Regis, per idem breve ibidem eodem die de Sagio, de worſted viridi i ſarg. cum iv tapetis.

Eidem ad i culcitram faciendam de Sindone afforciat. iii pec.

Eidem ad idem de Coton xii lib.

Eidem ad tria paria lintheaminum de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad i ſavenaciam & i ridell. faciend. de carda ii pec. dim.

Eidem de ſaccis coreis ad pannos ii ſacci.

Eidem de bahudis pro eiſdem ii bahudi.

Eidem de ſella ad ſomerium ii cum iv lingulis.

Eidem de Coffris albis i par.

Eidem de Paner. groſſis i par.

Eidem ad i robam de quatuor garniamentis de panno de Douaco xii uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad alteram robam de totidem garnariis de panno de Lovan. xii uln. ii furr. gr. v. i capuc. men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad quatuor paria caligarum de panno brun. ii uln. dim.

Eidem ad iv paria rob. lin. de tela Paris xx uln.

Eidem de braccal. cor. capreol. ii braccal.

Eidem de capell. nigris ii.

Eidem

Eidem de Cirothecis vi paria.
Eidem de zonis ſericis albis iii.
Eidem de burſis de corio albo iii.
Eidem de ſellis pro palefridis i cum arſone albo & lingulis.
Eidem de gladiis ii.
Eidem de calcaribus deauratis iii paria.
Eidem de pelve ad truſſandum i pelvis cum lavatorio.
Eidem de manutergiis de Paris curt. ii.

Edmundo de *Cornubia* filio Domini *Edm.* de *Cornubia* ad apparatum ſuum pro ſe novo milite, tanquam Bannaretto, faciendo, *viz.*

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno de Colon. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quayntaſium ſuum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pec. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i robam ſuam de ſcarlet vi uln, Eidem ad alteram robam ſuam de panno viridi de Lovan. xi uln. dim. ii fur. men. i. fur. gr. v. i. fur. popl. ii cap. pur. quil. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem ad i lectum ſuum *viz.* ad i culcitram de panno ad aur. Dyaſpyn ii panni.

Eidem ad idem de ſindone afforc. ii pan.
Eidem ad matraciam ſuam de Carda ii pec.
Eidem ad i par lintheaminum de tela Paris xxiv uln.
Eidem ad Canevac. ſuum de Canabo xii uln.

Conſimiles apparatus habuerunt

Guil. de *Pomeri* tanquam banerettus, & tres alii.

In this ſame Rolle are contained the Proviſions made in the Wardrobe for the Coronation of Queen Philippa, *which was ſolemnized on xviii of* February *in this fourth Tear.*

Numb. XXIV.

Comp. Garder. de anno 5 Ed. 3.

Waltero de *Manny* ad apparatum ſuum pro ſe novo milite, tanquam Baneretto, faciendo, *viz.*

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigiland. de panno Col. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quayntaſium ſuum de panno Tartar. in ſerico rad. ad aur. vi uln.

Eidem ad ii robas, quælibet de quatuor garnir. pro ſe de panno dim. in grano long. & murrell. xxii uln. i fur. Men. de viii tiris, iv fur. Men. quælibet de vii tiris. ii furr. gr. v. quælibet de vii tiris, ii capuc Men. pur. cap. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem

Eidem ad lectum ſuum *viz.* ad culcitram de panno ad aur. Dyaſpyn in ſerico ii pann.

Eidem ad idem de ſindone afforc. ii pec.

Eidem ad matraciam ſuam de carda ii pec.

Eidem ad lintheamina de tela Paris xxx uln.

This moſt valiant Knight was a Native of Henault, *brought over hither by Queen* Philippa, *and made her Carver*, & demoura la jeune Royne *Philippe* a petite compaignie de ſon pays, horſmis une Damoiſel, qu'on appeloit par nom *Wantelet* de *Manny*, qui y demoura pour ſervir & tailler devant elle: lequel fit puis tant de proueſſes en tant de lieux, qu'on n'en ſcait le nombre Froiſſ. *vol.* 1. c. 20. *He was afterwards moſt deſervedly elected into the Order of the* Garter.

Numb. XXV.

Comput. Garder. de anno ſexto Ed. 3.

Roberto de *Scoresburgh*, *Willimo* de *Denam*, *Richardo* de *Aldebury*, *Johanni* de *Shardelow*, *Thomæ Bacon*, & *Willimo* de *Shareſhull* ad apparatus pro militia eorundem, tanquam pro Banerett a Domino Rege ſuſcipienda anno præſenti per tria brevia de privato ſigillo, *viz.*

Ad capas & tunicas infra vigiland. de panno rubro mixto de ----- xxxii uln.

Eidem ad ſex mantell. & quinq; tunicas pro eiſdem de panno Tartar. radiat. ad aur. xxxvi uln. & vi furr. men. quælib. de viii tiris.

Eiſdem ad ſex robas, quælibet de iiii garniament. de panno in grano long. ii pan. iv uln. xxiv fur. Men. quæl. de viii tiris. xii fur. gr. v.

Eiſdem ad ſex alias robas, quælib. de iv garniam. de pann. virid. curt. xii capuc. Men. dim. ---- quodlib. de xxxii ventr.

Eiſdem ad ſex lectos *viz.* ad ſex culcitras de pann. ad aur. Dyaſpinet ii pann.

Eiſdem ad idem de ſindone afforc. ii pec.

Eiſdem ad ſex par. lintheam. de tela Paris pro quolibet pari xxiv uln. Cxliv uln.

Eiſdem ad ſex canevac. de Carde inde de Lumbars pro quolibet canevacio ii panni xii pec.

Scoresburg *was a Juſtice* Itinerant *in* 4 E. 3.

Denam *one of the Barons of the* Exchequer.

Aldebury, Shardelow, Bacon, *and* Shareſhull *Juſtices of the* Common Pleas.

Numb.

Numb. XXVI.

Comp. Garderob. 7 E. 3.

Conſimilem apparatum pro militia a Rege ſuſcipienda habuere

Johes de Shoreditche,
Will. de Shareſhull,
Nath. de Bathonia,
Simon fil. Richardi,
Rob. de Scardeburgh,
Joh. Petit,
Nich. Giffart.

} tanquam Banneretti.

William de Shareſhull *was made a Judge in this Year.* Rob. de Scarburgh *was Chief Juſtice of the Common Pleas in the* 14*th Year.* John Shoreditch *was a Judge in the* 12*th Year. And if theſe two latter were the Perſons, thus created Knights in this* 7*th Year, the Note inſerted in* Dugd. Orig. Jurid. *p.* 137. *which aſſerts that no Sergeants at Law were Knighted before* xxvi *of* Hen. viii, *may be a Miſtake.*

Numb. XXVII.

Comput. Johis Coke Proviſoris magnæ Garderobæ a feſto S. Mich. anno 21. *uſq;* 31 *Januar. anno* 23. *Edv.* 3. *m.* 21.

Domino Mauritio *Fitz Thomas* de *Kildare* & ſocio ſuo pro apparatibus ſuis ad ordinem militarem ſuſcipiend. de manibus Dom. noſtri Regis ad feſtum Natalis Dom. apud *Guldeford* celebratum anno regni 21. *viz.* ad i cotam & unam capam ipſius Comitis pro vigilia ſua, & pro coopertorio & teſtario ſuo fact & - - - de Sindone afforc. & pro coopertorio de pann. curt azureo furr. de men. pur. & pro lintheam. de tela Paris fact. Et ad i Canabum pro eodem lecto faciend. & ad iiii tapeta lanæ, quodlibet tapet. continen. xii uln. & dim. & ad faciend. paramenta ſua de Dyaſpyns fortz furr. de men. pur. Et ad faciend. i rob. de pann. long ſcarletti de Brucell. furr. cum furr. de meniver.

Et ad unam aliam robam de pan. long. virid. de Brucell. furr. cum menever, & ad faciend. unam cotam, & i capam pro Domino *Philippo* de *Staunton* prædicto pro vigilia ſua de pan. ruſſetto & ad faciend. lectum ſuum de panno Dyaſpynet Cardæ de *Lumbardie*, tela de *Wilton* & canabi, & ad facienda apparamenta ſua de panno ſerici Tartaryn furr. cum meniver, & ad i faciend. i rob. ſuam de panno viridi curt. furr. cum menever, pople, & *Straulyng.*

ii uln. dim. pro vigil. pann. curt. mixt.
x uln. pann. azur. pro coopert. lecti color. curt.
i penul. pro lecto de cccii^{xx}ii ventr. men. pur.
i pec. dim. Sindonis afforc.
xxx uln. telæ Paris.
xv uln. curt. canabi.
iiii tapeta lanæ.
ii pan. Dyaſpyns fortz.
i penul. de cxxiiii ventr. men. pur.
xii uln. panni long. de ſcarletto de Brucell.
vi furr. utr. de viii tiris fur. men.
vi capuc. utr. de xl ventr. men. pur.
xii uln. pan. long. virid. de Brucell.
vi furr. men. utr. de viii tiris - - - -
i capuc. de xl. ventr. men. pur.
vi uln. pann. ruſſeti curt.
ii pan. Dyaſpynet.
ii pec. Carde.
xxiiii uln. curt. telæ de Wilton.
x uln. curt. de Canabo.
vi uln. de Tartaryn.
i penul. de c vent. men.
x uln. panni virid. color. curt.
ii capuc. utr. de - - - - ventr. men.
ii furr. pople.
ii furr. de *Straulyng.*

Dom. *Thomæ* de *Fencotes* pro apparatu ſuo ad recipiend. ordinem militarem de manibus Regis ad modum Baneretti ad feſtum Natalis Domini apud *Guldeford.*

x uln. panni long. ſcarletti in grano.
x uln. pan. long. virid.
ii furr. utr. de viii tiris men.
ii fur. de pople.
ii fur. de biſs.
ii capuc. utr. de xxxii ventr. men. dim. pur.
i penula de cxx ventr. menev.
vi uln. pan. curt. Ruſſet.
vi uln. de Tartaryn.
ii pec. Carde.
xxxiii uln. curt. telæ Paris.
ii pann. ad aur. Dyaſpin.
i pec. Sindonis afforc.

Tho.

Tho. *de* Fencotes *was conſtituted Judge of the Common-Pleas* 14 January 21 *E.* 3.

NUMB. XXVIII.

Comp. Joh. Norbury *cuſtodis magn. Garder. anno* 34 *Ed.* 3. *m.* 5.

Johanni Mowbray & *Willimo Skipwith* pro apparatibus ſuis ad ordinem militarum de Dom. Rege ad modum Baneretorum recipiendum ad feſtum Natalis Domini prox. futur. utroq; eorum capiendo pro robis ſuis x uln. pan. marbrun. mixt. long. in grano, x uln. pan. virid. mixt. long. de Brucell. & penul. de cxx ventr. men. pur. duas furrur, utr. de vii tiris men. pur. duas furrur. de biſs. utr. de vii tiris, duas furr. de Popre, duo capuc. utr. de xxxii ventr. men. dim. pur. vi uln. pan. ruſſet long. pro una cota & i capa faciend. & infra vigiland. vi uln. virid. Tartaryn radiat. duos pan. ad aur. Sigaſtons, i pec. Sindon inde afforc. ii pecias Cardæ de *Lumbardy* xxiiii telæ lineæ Paris.

Theſe two were conſtituted Judges of the Common-Pleas, the firſt on 11 July, *the later on* 25 Oct. 33 *E.* 3.

NUMB. XXIX.

Comp. Alani *de* Stokes *Cuſtod. Garder.* 7 *Ric.* 2. *m.* 10.

Johanni Holt & *Willo Burgh.* Juſticiarijs de communi banco Dom. Regis pro apparatu ſuo ad ordinem militarem de Dom. Rege apud Eltham in feſto Natalis Domini anno ſeptimo ad modum Baneretti ſuſcipiend. utriq; eorum pro apparatu ſuo de dono ipſius Domini Regis x uln. panni blu. long. & x uln. pann. virid. long. ii furr. utr. de cxx ventr. men. gr. ii furrur. de biſs. utraq; de vii tiris, ii furrur. de pople, utraq; de vi tiris, & ii capuc. utrumq; de xxxii ventr. men. pur. & pro ii robis inde faciend. & furrur. utriq; eorum pro uno mantello inde faciend. & furrur. vi uln. Tartarin virid. radiat. & i penul. de cxx ventr. men. pur. & pro i capa infra vigiland. utriq; eorum vi uln. ruſſet long. & utriq; eorum pro lecto ſuo inde faciend. ii pann. ad aur. Sigaſten. i pec. Sindonis viridis afforc. xxiiii uln. Telæ lineæ Braban. ii pec. Cardæ de *Lumbardy.*

NUMB. XXX.

Liber Cotom. in Officio Garderob. 2 *R.* 2.

P. 168. *Waltero Clopton* capitali Juſtic. de Banco Regis, & *Rob. Charleton* capital. Juſtic. de Communi Banco Regis

pro apparat. ſuis ad ordinem militar. de Dom. Rege apud *Wyndeſore* in feſto Sancti *Georgij* ad modum Banneretti ſuſcipiend. *viz.* utriq; eorum ad i rob. yemal. fact. & fur. x uln. pan. blu. long. i furur. de cxx vent. men. gr. i furur. de biſs. de vii tir. i furur. de popl. de vi tir. & i capuc. de xxxii vent. men. pur. & ad i rob. eſtival. fac. & lin. x uln. pan. viridis long. i pec. & dim. Syndon. virid. afforc. & ad i tunic. & mantell. de tartar. virid. radiat. cum aur. fac. & ad mantell. furur. cum i penul. de cxx ventr. men. pur. & ad i capam fac. ad infra vigiland. vi uln. pann. ruſſet long. & utriq; eorum ad lectum ſuum fac. & lin. ac pro balneo ſuo ii pann. ad aur. ſegaſton & i pec. Sindon. virid. afforc. xxiiii uln. tel. lin. Brabant p. iiii^{or}. qrt. & vi pec. Card. de *Coloign* de dono dom. R. per literam de privato Sigillo eidem cuſtodi direct dat. xxxi die *Martij*.

Numb. XXXI.

Computus Garderobæ in Libro Cotom. *dicto* 12 *Rich.* 2.

P. 175^{b} *Galfrido* de la *Vale* de *Hibernia* ordinat. per Dom. Regem ad ordinem militarem ad modum Banneretti de eodem Domino Rege apud *Wyndeſore* ultimo die *Febr. viz.* die Dominica prox. ante Carniprivium anno 12 ſuſcipiendum pro apparatu ſuo. Inprimis, ad i rob. de pann. blu. long. fac. & fur. *viz.* i tunic. in parte linat. & furr. cum agn. alb. i ſupertunic. apert. i goun long. furr. cum biſs. & purfilat. cum men. pur. i cloc. long. furr. cum men. gr. & i capuc. fur. cum men. pur. & i cap. dupl. i cap. de pann. ruſſet long. ad infra vigiland. i tunic. & i mantell. de tartar. rub. rad. cum aur. dicto mantell. fur. cum men. pur. & cum i laq; de ſerico pro veſtura ſua ad prandium, & ad i par calig. de pann. nigr. long. & ad i lect. cont. i coopert. de pann. ad aur. Segaſton lin. circa bordur. cum Sindone afforc. i par. linthiam. de tel. lin. Brabant. & pro balneo cooperiend. cum tel. conſ. & i curtin. & i cauenac. & ad i par. rob. lin. de tel. Brabant. & pro al. apparat. ſuo, *viz.* i glad. cum zona de cor. alb. i par. ſotular. i par. bot. ii par. Calcar. deaurat. & pro equo ſuo i Sell. coopert. de cor. nigr. cum pectoral. & freno de cor. nigr. & cum arceon. coopert. de cor. alb. per literam de privato Sigillo.

Numb. XXXII.

Liber Cotom *in Off. Garder.* 13 *R.* 2.

P. 185[b] Dominis - - - - Comiti *March*, *Tho.* Comiti *Staffford*, & *Alfonſ.* filio Comiti de *Den.* in *Arragon* pro veſtura & apparat. eorum ad ordinem milit. de Domino Rege apud *Wyndeſore* in feſto S. *Georgii* anno xiii [*Rich.* 2.] ſuſcipiend. *viz.* cuil't eorum ad i rob. yemal. fac. & fur. x uln. pann. blu. long. ii furr. utrq; de cxx vent. & i capuc. de xxxii ventr. men. pur, & i rob. eſtival. fac. & lin. x uln. pann. virid. long. & i pec. & dim. Sindon. virid. afforc. & ad i tunic. & i mantell. fac. & ad mantell. fur. vi uln. tartar. rub. radiat. cum aur. & i penul. de cxx vent. men. pur. & ad i capam ad infra vigiland. vi uln. pann. ruſſet long. & cuil't eorum ad lectum ſuum fac. & lin. ac pro balneo ſuo cooperiend. ii pann. ad aur. Sigaſt. & i pec. Sindon. virid. afforc. xxiiii uln. tel. lin. Brabanc. pro iiii quart. & ii pec. card. de *Lumbard.* per literam de privato Sigillo.

Numb. XXXIII.

Froiſſ. vol. 4. c. 63. *in his Narrative of the firſt Expedition of* Rich. 2. *into* Ireland, *informs us that* Henry Caſtide *propoſed to the four Kings of that Country, who ſubmitted themſelves,* " Se volontiers ils recevoient l'ordre de Cheva-
" lerie, & que le Roy d'*Angleterre* les vouloit faire Cheva-
" liers : ainſi comme uſage & couſtume de *France*, & en
" *Angleterre*, & en autres pais ——— & furent faits Cheva-
" liers de la main du Roy *Richard* d'*Angleterre* en l'egliſe
" Cathedrale de *Dunglin* [*Dublyn*] & fut le jour noſtre dame en
" *Mars*, qui fut en ce temps par un Jeudi, & adonc veil-
" lerent le Mecredi toute la nuict ces quatre Rois en ladite
" Egliſe & au l'endemain a la meſſe & a grande ſolennite
" ils furent faits Chevaliers ; —— & eſtoient les quatre Rois
" treſrichement veſtus ainſi comme a eux appartenoit, &
" *S'aſſirent ce jour a la table du Roy* Richard d'Angleterre." *As it is in the printed Edition, but in a moſt beautiful* MS. Et ſervent ce jour a la table du Roy d'*Angleterre.*

Numb. XXXIV.

Froiſſ. *l.* 4. *c.* 114, *deſcribes the Coronation of* Hen. 4. Le Samedi devant ſon couronnement, il ſe departit de *Weſtmonſtier*, & s'en alla au Chaſteau de *Londres*, a tout grand nombre de

de gens: Et celle nuict y veillerent tous les Eſcuyers, qui devoient eſtre faits Chevaliers le lendemain, qui furent le nombre de xlvi; & eurent tous ces Eſcuyers chacun ſa chambre, & chacun ſon *baing*, ou ils ſe baignerent celle nuict, & le lendemain le Duc de *Lancaſtre* les fit Chevaliers a ſa Meſſe, & leur donna longues cottes verdes a eſtroites manches fourrees de menuver [*& grans chapperons paraulx fourres de Menu vair*] en guiſe de Prelats; & avoient les dits Chevaliers ſur ſa feneſtre eſpaule un double cordeau de ſoye blanche, a blanches houppettes pendans.

The Words in the Italick *Character are conteined in a beautiful Manuſcript of this Hiſtory.*

Numb. XXXV.

Hollingſheads *Hiſt. p.* 511. *Coronation of* Hen. 4.

On the Sundaie *following, being the even of St.* Edward, *the new King lodged in the* Tower, *and there made forty ſix Knights of the* Bath, *to wit: three of his Sonnes, The Earle of* Arundell, *the Earle of* Warwike *his Sonne, the* [*Brother of the*] *Earle of* Stafford, *Two of the Earle of* Devonſhire's *Sonnes, the Lord of* Beaumont, *the Lord* Willoughbye's *Brother, the Earle of* Stafford's *Brother, the Lord* Camois *his Sonne, The Lord of* Paule, Thomas Beauchampe, Thomas Pelham, John Luttrell, John Liſteie, William Heankeford *Juſtice*, William Brinchleie *Juſtice*, Bartholomew Rachford, Giles Daubenie, William Butler, John Aſhton, Richard Sanape, John Tipſton, Richard Francis, Henrie Perſie, John Arundell, William Strall, John Turpington, Ailmer Saint, Edward Haſtings, John Creiſteie, Gerald Satill, John Arden, Robert Chalons, Thomas Dimocke, Hungerford, Gilethorpe, Newport, *and diverſe others, to the Number of fortie and ſix.*

Numb. XXXVI.

Liberatio pannorum in magna Garderoba Domini Regis erga Coronationem Domini Henrici *Regis* Angliæ *Quarti.*

Dominis *Thomæ, Johanni* & *Humfrido* filiis Domini Regis pro apparatibus ſuis ad ordinem militarem de eodem Rege apud *Turrim London* iu vigilia Coronationis ſuæ recipiendum, videlicet, cuilibet eorum ad unam capam infra vigilandum iii uln. pann. Ruſſet long. & ad unum mantellum v uln. tartarin virid. radiat. cum aur. & furrur. de cxx ventr. men. pur. pro eiſdem mantellis furrurand, & ad lectos ſuos & *Balnea*, videlicet

cuilibet

cuilibet eorum ii pann. ad aur. Racamatez. xxv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. iv uln. iii quart. tel. lin. Fland. & i pec. Carde de dono ipſius Regis contra idem tempus.

Domino *Thomæ* Comiti *Arundell*, & tribus aliis Comitibus, & v Baron. *viz.* Dom. *Edmundo* Comiti *Stafford*, Dom. *Rich.* filio Comitis *Warr.* Dom. *Hugoni* fratri Com. *Stafford*, Domino de *Camond*, Dom. de *Mawley*, Dom. de *Latymer*, Dom. de *Deyncourt*, & Dom. *Seynteſmond* Baron; Dom. de *Beaumond* & xxxiii aliis militibus *viz.* cuilibet eorum pro apparatibus ſuis de eodem Domino Rege apud prædictam *Turrim* in eadem vigilia ſua ad ordinem militarem recipiendum quinq; uln. panni ſcarlett, v uln. panni viridis long. ad ii rob. inde faciend. i furr. de Bis de vii tir. i furr. de popur. de vi tir. & ii capuc. de xxiv ventr. men. pur. pro eiſdem rob. furrur. & cuilibet eorum Comit. & Baron. v uln. tarterin virid. radiat. cum auro, & cuilibet dictorum militum v uln. tarterin virid. & blew ad i mantell. inde fac. & i furr. de cxx ventr. men. pur. pro eiſdem mantell. furrurand. & ad i capam infra vigiland. vii uln. pan. ruſſet long, ac etiam pro lect. & *balneis* ſuis cuilibet eorum ii pann. ad aur. Racamatez, xxiv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. & i pece Carde de dono ipſius Regis eiſdem fact. contra idem tempus.

Lib. in Off. Garder. p. 1.

Inter mandata de *Ter. Mich.* primo *Henr.* 4ti. *Henri* par la Grace de Dieu Roy de *Engleterre* & de *Fraunce* & Seignur d'*Irlande*, As Treſorer & Chamberlains de noſtre Eſchequier Saluz. Nous vous mandons, que de noſtre treſor vous facez paier vint marcs a *Henry Grene* Roy Heraud, & as autres diverſes heraudes d'*Engleterre*, d'Eſcoce, & des autres pais a la Creation des pluſoures novolx Chivalers par nous affaire a la Toure de *Londres* dymenge devant noſtre Coronation. Donne ſoubs noſtre privie Seal a *Weſtm.* le quart. jour d'*Octobre* l'an de noſtre regne premier.

Exit. Pell. Mich. 1 H. 4. *Sabbati* 22 Nov.

Henrico Greene Regi Heraldorum, & aliis certis Heraldis de *Anglia*, & de *Scotia*, & de aliis partibus extraneis exiſtentibus apud *Turrim London* die Dominico prox. ante Coronationem Domini noſtri Regis *Henrici* quarti ad ſolempnitatem diverſorum militum de novo creatorum per dictum Dominum Regem xx marcas, quas Dominus Rex eiſdem Heraldis liberare mandavit de dono Regis per brev. *&c.* xiii *l.* vi *s.* viii *d.*

Numb. XXXVII.

Mſ. Norfolc. *in Off. Arm. n.* 15.

Anno Domini 1413 ætatis vero hujus Principis xxvi, quinto nonas *Aprilis* die *viz. Veneris* ante *Dominicam* paſſionem Domini, omnibus ad futuram Coronationis ſolempnitatem requiſitis ſecundum laudabiles ritus regni *Angliæ* requiſito modo ſapientium regni prudentia previa præparatis, Præfatus Princeps concomitante honorabilium Procerum tam ſpiritualium quam temporalium nobili & præſtanti comitiva de *Kyneſton* ſuper Thameſiam verſus caſtrum ſuum vocatum *Turrim London* iter arripuit, cui venienti numeroſa multitudo Principum, Comitum, Baronum, Militum, Armigerorum, & aliorum Procerum regni ſui, necnon concives *London* modo competenti & nobili apparatu,& cum debiti honoris impenſa, ac univerſus clerus proceſſione feſtiva & omni ſolennitate qua poterant obviam veniebant, ſicque *Turrim London* talibus exaltatus honoribus eſt ingreſſus. Apud ipſam *Turrim London* congregati erant circiter quinquaginta ſive plures proceres, Juvenes notabiles ad dignitatem militaris Ordinis multum apti, a principibus & regi nobilibus trahentes originem, qui ad hoc conveniant, ut in tantæ ſolennitatis exordio in ſui honoris incrementum a tanto Principe in milites crearentur. Venerando quoq; Principi tantæ ſolennitatis feſtum, cui nihil requiſitum deerat, unacum Principibus, & Magnatibus ſuis præſentia propria decoratu ſtatu regio, prout decuit, reſidenti tociuſq; feſti feſtivam claritatem ſuæ dignitatis illuſtranti radiis, Juvenes veſtimentis, quibus taliter ordinandos veſtiri decuit, decenter amicti, in ſignum quod conſimile obſequium ſub armigerorum habitu non erant de cætero præſtituri, ad epularum ſolennia regia ferendo fercula obſequia debita exhibebant, qui in continenti poſt completas tanti convivii Epulas, ac cameras ſuas, loco *viz.* ad tanta negocia parato, & deputato ducebantur, ibiq; Duces, Comites, Barones, & nobiles milites conſultores habebant, qui qualiter ſe gererent in venerabili ordine, quem ſuſcepturi fuerant, quid eidem ordini congruum, & quod congruum eſſe poſſet, ipſos ſumma prudentia & cura diligentiſſima informabant. Ipſi quorum juvenes tempore congruenti balnea ad hoc parata, ut moris eſt, intrabant, vigilias congruas ſub vigili cuſtodia obſervabant, & aliis quibuſcunq; obſervanciis, quæ tali negotio pertinere ſolebant, totis niſibus inſiſtebant; Tota deinceps nocte in talibus expedita, & tenebris Phœbi radiis exilium pacientibus, aurora lucente,

lucente, lectis precioſis aureis, in quibus requieverunt, quibuſdam famulis regiis, ut moris eſt, pro eorum feodo liberatis, miſſa audita, & certæ devocionis ſuffragiis completis, equos nobiles aſcendentes juvenes ordinandi; palliis ſericis induti uſq; ad aulæ regiæ januas devenerunt, ubi cum deſcendiſſent, quilibet ipſorum inter duos milites, ſecundum quod ejus ſtatui ſive gradui congruebat, honorifice deductus, a Principe magnifico ſtatu reſidente regio numeris venerabilium & magnatum ſtipato cuneis in novos honores militaris Ordinis promovetur. Deinde in eiſdem palliis ſericis in regali præſentia diſcumbentes, licet precioſis ferculis antepoſitis, per tota prandendi tempora nil guſtabant. Poſt tanta regalis convivii ſolennia, novelli milites ipſa pallia exuentes, veſtes de liberata regia ejuſdem ſectæ precioſas nimium induebant; & cum ipſe Rex in iſta eadem vigilia Dominicæ Paſſionis uſq; *Weſtmonaſterium* in ſumma nobilitate & competentiſſima ordinatione concomitante innumerabili multitudine Principum & Nobilium regni ſui, prout tantam mageſtatem regiam decuit, equitaret, Omnes præfati juvenes tirunculi ordine compoſito ſpectabili apparatu intuencium oculis ſuo geſtu nimias conferendo delicias, ipſum Regem per medium Civitatis *London* præcedebant equeſtres.

See 62 B. 5. in bibl. Harl. *where (if my Memory doth not fail me)* Elmham *is ſaid to be the Writer of this Hiſtory.*

Numb. XXXVIII.

Liberatur. Dom. noſtri Regis Henrici *Quinti facta diverſis Dominis, Dominabus, Militibus, Clericis, Scutiferis, Valettis, & aliis diverſis perſonis contra Coronationem ſuam &c.*

Edvardo Comiti *Marchiæ*, *Rogero* fratri ſuo - - - - - Comiti *Hunt.* - - - - Dom. le Deſpenſer - - - - fratri Comitis *Hunt. Jo. Phelip* - - - - *Rothenhale* - - - *Weſt.* Scutiferis, & cuilibet eorum pro apparatibus ſuis ad Ordinem militarem apud *Turrym London* de Domino Rege recipiendum in vigilia Coronationis ſuæ, *viz.* v. uln. pann. virid. long. v uln. pan. blod. long. ad ii Rob. inde fact. v furrur. dim. qualibet de vi tir. pople & Cii^{xx}ii ventr. Men. pur. iii tymbr. dim. xv beſtes de Ermyn pro dict. rob. dictorum Com. *March*, fratris Com. *Hunt.* & Dom. le Deſpenſer inter ſe furrand. & cuilibet eorum v uln. tarterin. virid. ad unum mantell. inde fac. & x tymbr. xix ventr. Menev. pur. pro mantell. dictorum Com. Fratrum ſuorum ac Dom. le Diſpenſer furr. ac etiam cuilibet eorundem ac Scutif. prædicto-

rum iii uln. pan. ruſſette long. ad i capam infra vigiland. & pro lectis & *balneis* ſuis, cuilibet eorum i pann. ad aurum racamatz. vi uln. worſted med. aſſ. xiv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. & i pec. de Carde de dono Regis erga idem tempus.

NUMB. XXXIX.

Fabian. Chron. *p.* 397. 5 Hen. 5. *The King held St.* George's *Feaſt, and dubbed there xv Knightes of the* Bath, *The Regiſter of the* Garter *places it under this Tear,* Anno Regis *Henrici* quinti omni genere virtutum præſtantiſſimi quinto, Cana oppido non exiguo jam ſibi ſubacto, Duciq; *Clarentiæ* credito, celebritatem Divi *Georgii* pro temporis exigentia curavit inibi ſervandam, ubi quindecim Equites regio more concreavit, *p.* 65. *See* Leland's *Collect. vol.* 1. *p.* 488.

Stow's *Ann. p.* 350. 6 H. 5. *The King went to* Caen, *where he ſolemnized the Feaſt of St.* George, *at which Feaſte he made xv Knights of the* Bathe, *five of them were Sir* Lewis Robſart, *Sir* Roger Salveine, *Sir* John Stewart, *Sir* John Shotebroke *and Sir* John Montgomery, *whom he ſent to beſiege divers Places thereabouts.*

Titus Livius *p.* 56. Walſingh. *p.* 448. *place this Creation in the 6th Tear, and likewiſe* Elmham *in* Bibl. Harley 62. B. 5. *as alſo the MS. Life of* Hen. 5 *in the College of Arms, which begins* Lucerna *&c. which two latter Writers are expreſs* quoſdam nobiles ſecundum *Balneorum* obſervantias creavit in milites.

In another MS. *in the College of Arms,* inter Cod. Norf. N. 48. *after the Narrative of the Surrender of* Faloys, *the King returned to* Caen, *and on 16th* Febr. *ordered a Proclamation* Et en icelluy ann fiſt le Feſte de Seint *George* en la ville de *Caen,* en laquelle il fiſt pluſieurs Chevaliers de ſon houſtell.

NUMB. XL.

Comp. Garderob. 9 Hen. 5.

Regi *Scottorum* ad & pro apparatu ſuo ad ordinem militarem de Domino noſtro Rege apud Caſtrum de *Wyndeſore* in vigilia Feſti Sancti *Georgii* recipiendum *viz.* ad i Capam cum i capuc. de pann. ruſſet curt. fact. infra vigiland. & ad i goun. cum capuc. de pann. blod. curt. fact. & furr. cum Min. pur. & i mantell. cum i tunica de Tarterin. virid. radiat. cum aur. fact. & furr. cum Menever. pur. conſ. ac ad i doublet de panno blod. curt. conſ. lin. cum tela lin. Braban. ac ad i lect. de worſted rub.

rub. med. aſſ. cont. coopertor. teſter, i par blanket de p. blanket curt. i par linth. de ii tel. lat. & iii uln. long. tel. lin. Braban. & i canvas fact. de Canab. ac ad cooperiend. dictum lect. cum pann. ad aur. de Luke, & ad cooperiend. *Balneum* ſuum tam infra quam extra & in fund. cum tel. lin. Braban. & de calcar. Glad. ſell. & aliis rebus ordinat. & fact. pro dicto Rege.

Comiti *Stafford*, ad, & pro apparatu ſuo ad ordinem militarem de Domino Rege noſtro apud caſtrum de *Wyndeſore* in vigilia Feſti Sancti *Georgii* recipiend. *viz.* ad i Capam *&c.*

Numb. XLI.

In the Inventory of the Goods of Hen. 5, *entred in Rot. Parl.* 2 H. 6. *m.* 30. Item divers remenantz de Tarterin Ray ordeignez pur les Chevaliers de *Bath* pris xx *s.*

Numb. XLII.

Henry 6. *upon* Whitſunday *in his fourth Year was dubbed Knight, by the Regent* [John *Duke of* Bedford *his Uncle*] *at* Leiceſter, *and then forthwith the King dubbed* Richard *Duke of* York, *that after was Father to King* Edward *the Fourth, and others to the Number of Forty.* Stow's *Chron. p.* 368.

This Hiſtorian doth not ſay, that this was the Degree of the Knighthood of the Bath, *and agrees not in the Number with the Regiſter of the* Garter *p.* 93, *which reckons only* 38.

Mr. Rymer *vol. x. p.* 356, *hath publiſhed the Names of the Perſons, to whom ſpecial Writs were ordered to be ſent, commanding them to attend upon the King, and to receive the Order of Knighthood with him, ſome of them being then in Wardſhip, the Writs were directed to their Guardians, and others in their Minority, the Writs were ſent to their Fathers.*

De Ordine Militari una cum Rege ſuſcipiendo

Richardus Dux *Eborum*,
Comitiſſæ *Weſtmerlandiæ*,
Joh. filius & hæres Ducis *Norf.*
Duci *Northfolciæ*,
Hen. filius Com. *Northumbriæ*,
Comiti *Northumbr.*
Thomas Dominus de *Roos*,
Thomas de *Beaumont*,
Dom. de *Beaumont* matri ſuæ,
Dominus de *Welles*,
Sibimet,
Dominus de *Mautravers*,
J. Cornewale.
William Neville,
Comitiſſæ *Weſtmerlandiæ*,
Georgius Neville,
Eidem Comitiſſæ,
Filius & hæres Dom. de *Talbot*,

Domino de *Talbot*, Sibimet,
Comes *Devon*, *Henry Gray*,
Comitiſſæ *Clarentiæ*, Domino de *Grey* de *Codenore*,
Johannes Comes *Oxon*, *Robertus Veer*,
Richardus Comes *Weſtmerlandiæ*, *Gilbertus Denham*,
Dominus de *Camoys*, Sibimet,
Willielmus Sheyne, ----- *Drury*,
Willielmus Babyngton, Sibimet,
Jacobus filius Comitis *Ormond*, ----- *Carbonet*,
Domino de *Bourgavenny*, Sibimet.
Henry Bourgchier,

In dorſo.

Quarto die *Maii* anno quarto apud *Leyceſtriam* ordinatum fuit, quod dirigantur literæ perſonis infraſcriptis de veniendo ad præſentiam Regis ad dictam villam pro ibidem una ſecum ſuſcipiendo in ſe *Ordinem Militarem* in feſto *Pentecoſtes* tunc proxime futuro. Præſentibus Dominis *Bedfordiæ*, *Cantuarienſi*, & *Eborum* Cancellario Archiepiſcopis, Duce *Exoniæ*, Epiſcopis *Dunelmenſi*, *Elienſi*, & *Bathonienſi*, ac Cuſtode Privati Sigilli, Dominis de *Cromwell*, & de *Scrop*, & aliis in Parliamento exiſtentibus.

Numb. XLIII.

W T. in Off. Arm. p. 34. *Anno Domini* 1429.

The Coronation of King Henry 6.

The ſixth day of November, *the Kinge of* England *was crown'd at* Weſtminſter *on St.* Leonard's-Day, *and at the ſame Coronation weare made xxxii Knights of the Bathe, and the Morrow after was the Princes Sonne of* Portugal *made Knight in the* Whitehall *at* Weſtminſter.

Fabians Cron. p. 419. *at whoſe Coronation were made xxxvi Knights of the* Bath, Stow's Annals *p.* 371. *to the ſame effect.*

Numb. XLIV.

Pat. 25. *H.* 6. *p.* 2. *m.* 5.

Rex omnibus, ad quos &c. Salutem,

Sciatis quod, per quandam Supplicationem, nobis, per dilectum Servientem noſtrum, Robertum Bolley, Servientem Ewariæ noſtræ, exhibitam, accepimus, qualiter ipſe Oppellas Barbitonſorum, ad portam hoſpitii noſtri, ubi-cumque fuerat, cum tot ſervientibus, quot pro occupatione hujuſmodi Oppellæ prædictæ neceſſarii fuerunt, & oportuni, habuit & occupavit, cum omni-

omnibus Proficuis & Commoditatibus eidem Occupationi aliquo modo pertinentibus, ſive ſpectantibus, prout ipſe tempore cariſſimi Domini & Patris noſtri Defuncti habuit.

De Gratia noſtra Speciali Conceſſimus præfato Roberto, & Alexandro Douour Valetto Ewariæ noſtræ Opellas Barbitonſorum ad Portam, ſeu Portas Hoſpitii noſtri, Tenendas, habendas, & Occupandas a quinto die Julii Anno Regni noſtri viceſimo tertio, pro termino vitæ eorundem Roberti & Alexandri, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, cum tot ſervientibus, in Opellis prædictis ſervientibus & ſervituris, quot pro occupatione prædicta neceſſarii fuerint & oportuni, cum omnibus Proficuis & Commoditatibus, una cum feodis *Militum de Balneo*, quando erunt milites facti, ſive creati, videlicet,

De quolibet milite viginti quatuor ulnas Panni lanei, qui erunt circa *Balneum*, una cum una Tapet Longitudinis trium virgarum de Rubro Worſted, ac etiam viginti ſolidos pro Raſura cujuſlibet Militis ſic creati.

Quadraginta Solidos de quolibet *Barone*, ſeu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Raſura,

Centum Solidos de quolibet *Comite*, ſeu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Raſura.

Et decem libras de quolibet *Duce*, ſeu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Raſura.

Et ulterius Conceſſimus, quod nullus alius Barbitonſor habeat ſeu occupet aliquas Opellas Barbitonſorum, prope Portam, ſeu Portas Hoſpitii noſtri, niſi prædicti Robertus, & Alexander, durante vita eorum, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, eo quod expreſſa Mentio de aliis donis, & Conceſſionibus eiſdem Roberto & Alexandro per nos ante hæc tempora factis in Præſentibus facta non exiſtit, aut aliquo ſtatuto, actu, vel ordinatione, in contrarium factis non obſtantibus.

In cujus, &c.

Teſte Rege apud Weſtmonaſterium viceſimo quinto Die Julii.

Per ipſum Regem, & de Data prædicta Auctoritate Parliamenti.

Numb. XLV.

In my Notes to the Regiſter of the Garter under the xxviii Tear of H. 6. *there is an Inſtrument printed, which among ſeveral other things, orders the Heralds to be paid,* for the feſt of the newe made Knights at the *Tour* C*s. in the* 31 *Tear of his Reign.*

Numb.

Numb. XLVI.

Upton de re militari p. 8. Creantur & alio modo Milites, videlicet per *Balneum*, qui modus obſervatur in *Anglia*, & aliis regnis, ubi regnat pax.

Ibid. p. x. Ipſi Milites, qui creantur per *Balneum*, portant de conſuetudine in humero ſiniſtro ſuum ſtigma militare album; quod quidem ſtigma dictus tiro portabit, quouſq; fecerit aliquod notabile factum, niſi aliqua nobilis Domina illud tollat, ut docet conſuetudo *Angliæ*.

Numb. XLVII.

Claudius in Bibl. Cotton, C. 3. p. 69.

Knights of the Bath *made at the* Tower *of* London *before the Coronation of King* Edward IV.

George, *Duke of* Clarence, } *Brethrene to the Kinge.*
Richard, *Duke of* Glouceſter, }

John Mowbray, *Sonne and Heire to the Duke of* Norfolk.
John Stafford, *afterward Earl of* Wilteſhire.
Lord Thomas Fitz-Alane, *Sonne and Heire to the Erle of* Arundell.

Lord *Straunge*,

Sir *John Markham*,	Sir *Robert Markham*,
Sir *Robert Danby*,	Sir *Robert Cliffton*,
Sir *William Gelverton*,	Sir *William Stanley*,
Sir *John Wingefeld*,	Sir *Nicholas Byron*,
Sir *Walter Blount*,	Sir *William Cantelewe.*

On the 10*th day of* July *following, there was paid* Gartero & cæteris Regibus armorum & heraldis pro milicia Ducis [Clarenc.] fratris dom. Regis x *l. B.* 3. *p.* 42. *and the like for the Duke of* Gloceſter, pro militia. Ms. Ant. *a Wood in* Muſ. Aſhm. n. 117.

Fragment relating to Edw. IV. *publiſhed by Mr.* Hearne *at the End of* Sprots *Chronicle p.* 288. The 26 of *January* the King *E.* removed from *Sheene*——rode ſtreigte unto the *Toure* of *London* and reſtid there all night, where as on the morow He made xxxii Knigtis of the *Bathe*, the whiche day at aftirnoone deperting frome the *Toure*, in like goode ordre as they came thiddir, theis xxxii nw Knigtes preceding immediately before the King in theire Gownis and Hoodis, and tookins of whigte Silke upon theire Shouldeirs, as is accuſtumed at the *Bath, and ſo in this goodely ordre He was brought to* Weſtmynſtir, *where as on*

on the morow being St. Petirs-*day and* Sonday *he was ſolempnely crownid, &c.*

Menen. Deliciæ Equeſtr. p. 8. *ſaith that* Ed. IV. *was knighted by the Earl of* Devon.

NUMB. XLVIII.

Fragment relating to Ed. IV. *publiſhed by Mr.* Hearne *at the End of* Sprots *Chron. p.* 294, 295, 26 May 1464. *Queen* Elizabeth *was crownid at* Weſtminſtre *with grete ſolempnite, where as were made Knights of the* Bath *(as I knowe) the Lorde* Duras, *Sr.* Bartelot de Ribaire *of* Bayen, Gaſcons, *Sir* John Wydevile *Brothir to the Queene, &c.*

Fabian. Chron. p. 495, 1464, (5 E. 4.) 26 May *that yere* Whitſonday, *Quene* Elizabeth *was crownid at* Weſtminſter *with great Solempnite: at the which ſeaſon at the* Towre, *the night before the Coronation, emong many Knightes of the* Bath, *there made was as of that companie, Sir* Tho. Cooke, *Sir* Matthew Philip, *Sir* Raaffe Joſſeline, *and Sir* Henry Wavir *Citizens of* London, *then and there made Knightes.*

NUMB. XLIX.

Stat. 8. E. 4. c. 2. *An Act for Lyvereys. Provided that this Ordinance do not extend to any Lyverey gyven or to be gyven at the Kings or Queens Coronation —— or at the Creation of Knyghtes of the* Bath, *&c.*

NUMB. L.

In the Treatiſe ſtiled Domus Regis Angliæ *made under the Reign of this King, under the Title of Kings of Arms, Heralds, and Purſuivants, is this Clauſe. The Fees that they ſhall take at the making of Knights of the* Bath, *it appeared next after in the Chapter of Squires. In the Chapter touching the* Waits, *alſo this Toman waited at the making of Knights of the* Bath *waiting by night time upon them in the Chapel, &c.*

NUMB. LI.

E. 10. *penes me p.* ii^{xx}ii. xiii. b. & B. 2. *p.* 277. b. A. D. 1475, 15 E. 4. 18 *Apr.*

Edwarde by the Grace of God of *Tnglonde*, and of *Fraunce* Kinge, lorde of *Irelande* enhaunſed to the Order of Knighthode, after the Cuſtume of *Tnglande*, in tyme of Peace, his deceſt Son my Lord Prince of *Wales* Duke of *Cornwall*, and Erle of *Cheſter*,

Cheſter, and his right dere Son the Duke of *Yorke*, to whome were compeny and enhaunced with them to the ſame Knighthood Therle of *Lincoln* ſon and heyre of the Duke of *Suffolke*, the lorde *Thomas* [*Gray*] the Quenes ſon, and his Brother the Lorde *Richarde*, Therle of *Shrowesbury*, Therle of *Wilteſhere*, mayſter *Edwarde Widevill*, the lorde *Nevell*, the Lorde *Barkeley*'s ſon and heyre, the Lorde *Awdeley*'s ſon and heyre, the Lorde *Seyntamant*, the lorde *Stanley*'s ſon and heyre [*George*] the lorde *Storton*'s ſon and heyre, the Lorde *Haſting*'s ſon and heyre [*Edward*] the lorde *Ferreis* of *Charteley* ſon and heyre, Mayſter *Herbert* Broder of the Erle of *Pembroke*, Mayſter [*Thomas*] *Vaughan*, *Bryan* chefe Judge, *Lytylton* oone of the Juges of the Comon Place, Mayſter [*Henry*] *Bodryngam*, Mayſter *Bryan Stapilton*, [*William*] *Knyvett*, *Pilkynton* [*Richard*] *Ludlow* [*Richard*], *Charleton*. *Memorand.* that the ſame day the Kinge create the foreſayde Lord *Thomas* [*Gray*] Marquis *Dorſett* before dynner; and ſo in the habitt of Marquis above the habitts of new Knights, and he began the Table of Knights in Sainte *Edward*'s Chambre, and gave to the Officers of Armes for theyre Fee xx marks. *Memorand.* That at the tyme ordeined, that the King's Chamberlein ſhulde goo with the aunciente and well nortred Knights to advertyſe, and teche the Ordre of Knighthod to the Eſquiers beinge in the Bayne. The Kinge came in his owen Perſon, and dyd honour to all the Compeny with his owen noble counſell and hands.

Stow *in his Annals, p.* 428. *gives the like Narrative.*

Numb. LII.

E. x. penes me, p. lvii. *compared with* G. 2. p. 341. B. 2. p. 278. and w. y. in Off. Armorum.

The Marriadge of Richard *Duke of* York, *ſecond Son to* Edw. 4.

In the yere of our Lorde 1477, the Kinge our Sovereigne Lorde one the xv daye of *Januarye* ſolempniſed the matrimonial Feſte of his dere Sonne the Duke of *Yorke*, and the noble Lady *Anne* Daughter and ſole heyre of *Johne* Duke of *Northfolke*, to the honoringe of the whiche the King directed his Lettres to divers Nobles of this Realme to coome and appere at his Palace of *Weſtm.* one the forſayed daye to take the Order of Knighthode, and many of them were pardoned, and parte of them enhanſed to the Order of Knighthoode,

hoode, as, and in lyke Order, as they enſuen, in Seint *Edward*'s Chamber, one the xvii day of the foreſaid Month, and were dubbed one the xviii daye.

The *Bowſer*, ſon and heir. [*Henry* ſon and heir of the Lord *Bourgchier*,]

[The Lorde *Latymer*,]
The Lord *Barnes*,
The Lord *Powis*,
The Lord *Morlye*,
[The Lorde *Lawarre*,]
The Lord *Mountjoy*,
The Lord *Beauchamp*, ſon and heir [*John*]
Sir *Thomas Howard*, [ſon and heir of the Lord *Howard*,]
Sir *Thomas Bourſer*,
Sir *Thomas St. Leger*,
Sir *John Elrington*, Treaſurer, *&c.*
Sir *Giles Dawbeney*,
Sir *William Stoner*,
Sir *Guy Fearfax*,
Sir *William Gaſcoinge*,
Sir *Robert Broughton*,
Sir *Thomas Froweck*,
Sir *Henry Tailboys*,
Sir *William Redman*,
Sir *Henry Wentworth*,
Sir *Richard Delabere*,
Sir *Richard Lakyn*.

In ſeveral Copies of theſe Knights, there is a Note added,

Be it remembred, That theſe four, Sir *Richard Lakin*, Sir *William Redman*, Sir *Thomas Frowyke* and Sir *Hen. Wentworth*, not counſelled to ſhow moſt worſhipe, denyed part of the Duties belonging unto the Officers of Armes, which being referred to the Lord Chamberlain, to whome the ſaid Officers had their reſort, who well and perfectly underſtoode of all the auncient noble Cuſtomes of Chevalrie, He went and ſhewed it to the Kings Grace, and to the High and Mighty Prince the Duke of *Glouceſter*, high Conſtable of *Englond*, who then was Judge of the Office of Arms, who went in his own Perſon, and commanded *William Griffith*, oone of the Marſhalles of the King's halle, to charge every man of the forſayde Compeny to paye their Duties unto the Officers of Armes, that ys to underſtonde, of every Batcheler Knight xx *s.* of every Baron the double, and ſo dowble after theire degree, whiche commandemente was kept and payde for, *&c.*

Mr. Thinne, *in his* Advocate and Anti-advocate, MS. G. 2. penes me, p. 237. *ſaith, that theſe were then created Knights of the* Bath.

It may be here obſerved, that beſide theſe Sums in Money, the Officers of Arms then conſtantly received ſeveral of the Robes

as their Perquiſites, which are ſpecifyed in the Antient Formularies, and the Memorials of the Receipts of them from the 19 Hen. 8. *remain ſtill in the College, entred in the Books of the Partitions of their Fees.*

NUMB. LIII.

Stow's Ann. P. 418. Judgement given againſt Sir *Ralph Grey*, That his Spurs ſhould be ſtriken off hard by the heels, by the Hand of the Maſter-Cook, who is here ready to do, as was promiſed thee, at the time that he took off thy Spurs, and ſaid to thee as is accuſtomed, That and thou be not true to thy Sovereign Lord, he ſhall ſmite off thy Spurs with his Knife hard by the Heels, and ſo ſhewed him the Maſter-Cook ready to do his Office, with his Apron and his Knife.

There is a Memorandum *entred in the Year-Book*, Paſch. 4. Ed. 4. Et le dit Sir *Ralph Grey* fuit cary a *Doncaſtre*, & la fut deprive del honor del Chevalier devant mults del People le Roy: 1. Ses gilt Spores hewes de ſes pees & ſon eſpee, & tout ſon armour ſur luy debruſe, & pris de luy en le champe, *&c.*

NUMB. LIV.

Rymer. Vol. 12. *P.* 185. 1 *Ed.* 5.

To Otes Gilbert Squier.

Bibl. Harl. B. 18. *f.* 227.

Truſty and welbeloved, We grete you wele.

And by th'adviſe of our Derreſt uncle the Duc of *Glouceſter*, Protectour of this oure Royallme, during our Young Age, and of the Lords of our Counſell, we write unto you at this time, Willing and Natheleſſe, Charging you to prepare, and furniſh yourſelf to receive the noble ordure of Knighthood, at our Coronation, which, by God's Grace, we intende ſhall be ſolempniſed the xxii Day of this preſent moneth, at oure Palays of *Weſtminſter*, commaunding you to be here at oure *Toure* of *London* four Days afore the ſaid Coronation, to have Comynycation with oure Commiſſioners concerning that matter, not failing herof in any wiſe, as ye intend to pleaſe us, and as ye will anſwer.

Yeven, *&c.* the v Day of *Juyn.*

Semblable

Semblable Letters to
John Speke,
Beaumont,
Edward Courteney,
William Garraunt,
Thomas Arundell,
William Bolney,
Alexander Creſſemere,
John Clopton,
Henry Hayden,
John Wynkefeld,
Chriſtopher Willoughby,
Philip Calthorp,
Bedyngfeld,
Thomas Lewkenore,
William Barkeley,
John Stanley,
Gravile,
William Birmygam,
Thomas Butteler of *Beawſey,*
John Beron,
William Trowthek,
Milbourn,
The Lord *Dormond,*
The Lord *Sutton,*
Cornewall Lord of *Burford,*
Nevill, Son and Heir of the Lord *Bergevenny,*
John Brown of *Stamford,*
The Lord *Grey* of *Ruthen,*
John Gifford,
William Chenay of *Shepay,*
Robert White of *Southwarne-Borrowe,*
Gervaſe Clyfton of *Oddiſake,*
Nicholas Lile,
William Barkely of *Beverſton,*
Henry Vernon,
Nicholas Montgomery,
Grene,
William Ovedale,
William Say,
Son and Heir of Lord *Cobham,*
Th. Hamden of *Hamden,*
Thomas Darcy,
Rauf Sanford,
Babyngeſton,
Henry Colet, Alderman of *London,*
Kyngiſton,
John Pawlet,
Thomas Wyndeſore,
John Roger of *Frefolke.*

In the ſame Collection is a Writ from the Cloſe Rolls. 1 E. 5. *m.* 1. *bearing date* 20 May, *directed to the Sheriffe to ſummon ſuch as have* 40 l. *and have not been knighted, to appear on the* 8*th Day of* June, *to receive that Order.*

NUMB. LV.

W T. in Offic. Arm. p. 42[b]

Knights of the Bath, *made at the Coronation of* Richard 3. *and Queen* Anne.

Sir *Edmond* the Duke of *Suffolks* Son,
Sir *John Grey* Earl of *Kents* Son,
Sir *William* Lord *Sowche* his Brother,

Sir *Henry Burgavenny* [*Geo. Nevil* Son and Heir to the Lord of *Burgavenny*,]
Sir *Chriſtopher Wylloughby*,
Sir *William Barkley* of *Beverſton*,
Sir *Henry Banington* [*Babynton*, in *Hollingſh.* in another Mr. *Baynton*. *Banington* in *Grafton's* Chron.]
Sir *Thomas Arundell*,
Sir *Thomas Bolayne*,
Sir *Edmond Bedingfeilde*,
Sir *Brewas* of *Clifton* [*Gervaſe*]
Sir *William Say*,
Sir *William Enderby*,
Sir *Thomas Lewkenor*,
Sir *Thomas Ormond* [of *Urmond* in *Hollingſh.*]
Sir *John Browne*,
Sir *William Barkeley* of *Wyldy*. See *Hollingſh.* p. 733.
Sir *Edmond Cornwall* Baron of *Burford*.

This is printed in Grafton, *p.* 799. *and I have old Copies in E.* 10. *p.* 13. *E.* 11. *p.* 192.

Numb. LVI.

G. 5. *penes me p.* 75.

The Coronation of Hen. VII.

A. D. 1485. Upon *Symon* and *Judes* Evyn, the King proceeded to the *Tower*—— and on the day following, It is to be remembre, that ſame day before dener entered the yonge Duke of *Buckingham* to receive th'ordre of Knyghthode of the *Bathe*, the whiche held the Kings Towell, and the Lord *Fitzwater* entred for licenſe, he berith the King water, and in the like fourme entred [*Thomas*] *Cokeſay*, *Roger Lewkenor*, *Henry Heydon*, *Reginald Braye*, and *John Verney*, whiche every eche of theym bere a Diſhe to the Kings Table, the firſt cours onely, after that the Eſquiers Governours wer aſſigned them, and their Baynes were prepared in a grete Chambre in the Dongon, as of olde tyme accuſtomed. And when it was nyght, the King hymſelf of his benigne grace, nobly accompanyed with the Duc of *Bedford*, Therle of *Oxenford*, Therle of *Darbye*, Therle of *Devonſhir*, with many other noble Lordez, Knyghtes, and Eſquiers firſt yave them in the Beyn the Advertiſement of the Ordre of Knyghthode, and afor hym other Eſtats and Lordez *&c.* On the *Saturdaye*, when the Eſquiers

quiers whiche hadd bene in the Baynez where, and after alle other obſervances as of olde tyme accuſtumed, wer comen into the Hall, the Kinge in a riche gowne entred the Halle, and ſtode under the Clothe of Eſtate, to whome the Duke of *Buck.* was preſented by two Aſtates, and the Henſman that bere the Swerd and the Sporez preſented them to the Erle of *Oxenford*, And he toke the Right Spore, and preſented it to the King, and the King toke it to the Duc of *Bedford*, commanding hym to put it upon the Duc of *Buckingham*'s right Hele, and in likewyſe therle of *Darby* the left Spore, and the King girde the Swerde aboute hym and after dubbed hym Knyght. And in likewyſe and forme was the Lord *Fitzwater* preſented by two Baronez, and other Knyghts by Knyghtes, having a King of Armez before them, and when the Knyghtes were elle dubbed, The King create a Purſivaunte, and named hym *Rougedragon*, and then the King departed to his Chambre, the newe Knyghtes wente to the Chapell and offered as accuſtumed, And then they alle turned into the Halle ageyn, and ſatte alle at one Table and at one ſyde.

Menen. Del. Equeſt. *p.* 8, *ſaith that* Hen. 7. *himſelf was knighted by the Earl of* Arundell.

In a Roll of Knights created by Hen. VII, *now in my Cuſtody, which is on Parchment, and contains their Arms in proper Metals and Colours, and hath all the Marks of being the Original kept by the then* Garter *King of Arms, theſe Knights are not ſpecified to be Knights of the* Bath, *but are therein entred only under the Denomination of* Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Kyng.

NUMB. LVII.

Jul. in Bibl. Cotton *B.* 12, *p.* 33. *Coronation of* Eliz. *Queen of* H. 7, anno tertio.

On *Fryday* next before Seint *Katheryn*'s day, the Quenys good Grace —— came forwarde to the Coronacion —— entred into the *Tower* —— and ther the Gentilmen, called by the King's mooſt honourable lettres to receyve the Order of Knyghthod, were created Knyghts of the *Bath*, in manner and fourme as the picture thereof made, ſhewethe, whos names with the

Eſquiers

Eſquiers Governors by the Kings appoynment to attende upon the tyme of their ſaide Creation be hereafter written.

The [Lord *William*] Sone and heir of therle of *Devonſhir*	*John Crokher* His Brother
The Lord [*Edward*] *Dudley*	*Thomas Blount* *Edward Benſted*
William [*John*] *Gaſcoyne*	*Thomas Totoft* *Jamys Flemmyng*
Thomas Butteler	*Thomas Laurence* *John Langforth*
Edwarde Barkley	*William Woodall* *Thomas Troys*
Wylliam Lucy	*William Trevrye* *John Bell*
Thomas Hungreforde	*Robert Knowles* ———*Karleton*
Guydo Wolſton	———*Andeby* *Alexander Oxton*
Ri hard [*Thomas*] *Pemery*	*John Forteſcu* *William Wateſley*
John [*Rauff.*] *Sheldon*	*John Wharff* *Pyers Brent*
Hugh Loterell	*The Serjant Porter* *Thomas Penyngton*
Thomas Pultney	*William Truſſell* *Henry Liſley*
Hugh Conwey	— — — *Otewel Butteler*
Nicholas Liſley	*William Burges* *Robert Gethyn*

In the abovementioned Roll the Entry is only Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Quene.

Numb. LVIII.

Jul. in Bibl. Cotton *B.* 12, *p.* 59 *b.* 5 H. 7. 1489.

Item on the 21 day of *Novembre* was my Lorde Prince receyvid in manner, as enſueth, by Watter, when he came to his Creation—on the 29 of *Novemb*, when the King went to dinar

dinar my Lord Prince hild the towelle, the Lord *Stourton* bar the watter, therle of *Northumberland* toke say, the Lorde *Mautravers*, and the Lorde *Grey Ruthyn* hilde the bassyn, and the remenant waited on the Sewer, and bare dishes, that is to say, *Thomas West* sone and heire to the Lord *Lawar*, *John* Saint *John*, *Henry Vernon*, *John Hastings*, *William Griffith*, *William Tyndalle*, *Nicholas Mongomery*, *William Uvedall*, *Matthew Browne*, *Thomas Darcy*, *Thomas Cheyney*, *Edmond Gorges*, *Waultier Denes*, *William Scotte*, and *John Gyse*, and then their Esquiers Gouvernours, that war apointed by my Lorde the King's Chamberlain, that is to say, to awaite opon the Prince: *Thomas Brandon*, and *Thomas* of *Brereton*.

On therle of *Northumberland*
- *James Hide*
- *John Parker*, whiche *John* emploied the money otherwise, that he had receipved of the Sectours for that cause, and not to his wourship.

On the Lord *Mautravers*
- *John Baret*
- *Henry Uvedall*

On the Lord *Grey Ruthyn*
- *John Griffith*
- *John Stanshaw*

On the Lord *Stourton*
- *David Beaupre*, male for by him the th'office of Armes loft moche of hir dewtie
- *Edward Benstede*

On Sir *Thomas West*,
- *Richart Fisher*
- *Thomas Morteimer*

On Sir *John* St. *John*
- *Nicholas Audeby*
- *Thomas Digby*

On Sir *Henry Vernon*
- *John Fortescu*
- *Christopher Longdale*

On Sir *John Hastings*
- *Richart Wrotesley*
- *Thomas Thorp*

On Sir *William Griffith*
- *John Leighton*
- *Stephen Dyngley*

On Sir *William Tyndall*
- *John Carleton*
- *Thomas Ferres*

On

On Sir *Nicholas Mongomery*	*James Cayle* *William Mendam*
On Sir *William Uvedall*	*John Knolles* *John Almer*
On Sir *Matthew Browne*	*John Lakyn* *John Nell*
On Sir *Thomas Darcy*	*William Paris* *Thomas Gardener*
On Sir *Thomas Cheyney*	*James Metcalf* *John Warffe*
On Sir *Edmund Gorges*	*Robert Gythyn* *Alexander Oxton*
On Sir *Waulter Denis*	*James Conyers* *Hugh Denis*
On Sir *William Scotte*	*John Sigeſmont* *Thomas Winter*
On Sir *John Guyſe*	*Henry Hamps* *John Wiſtow*

And when it was night, and the Princes Bayn was prepared in the Kings Cloſet, and in the Entre between the Parlament Chambre, and the Chapelle, were the Baynes off therle off *Northumberlond*, and the Lord *Mautravers*, and the Lord *Gray Ruthyn*, and all the remenant ware in the Parlament Chambre, in ordre as abouewritten. And the King in his perſon gaue them the advertiſment of thordre Knyghode, and that ſame ſeaſon were al thos of the Kings chappell redyng the Sauter for the good ſpede of the Quen, wiche then traviled, and anon upon ix of the cloke that ſame nyght ſhe was delivered of a Princeſſe, wiche was criſtened on Seint *Andreus* day, yn *Weſtmynſt* cherche: And on the morn, when the Prince had herd his maſs, he was, with al his forſaid compeny, prively conveid throught Seynt *Stephens* Chappell to the netherend of the Steirs toward the Vicars logyng, wher he tooke his hors, and the remenant in the paleſs at the Sterchambre ſteir foot, toke ther hors, and therll of *Eſſex* bore the Princes Sword, and Spores, and ſoo they roode aboute the Standard in the Pales into *Weſtmynſter* Hall, the Prince formeſt, and the oder folowyng in order after ther Baynes, and before the Kings Benche thei alighted of their horſes, and ſo proceded into the *Whitt-*

hall,

hall, and ſtode along bi the ſide table, in tyme the Kyng came, and when the King was comyn, the Marquis of *Barkeley*, and therll of *Arundell* led the Prince to the preſence, And therll of *Oxonford* great Chamberleyn of *Englond* toke of therll of *Eſſex* the Sword and the Spores, and then preſented the right ſpore to the King, the Kyng comaunded the Marques of *Barkeley* to ſett hit on the Princes ryght Hele, and lykewyſe did therll of *Arundell* on the lyfft hele the toder ſpore, And then the Kyng gard on his Sworde, and dubbed hym Knyght, and after al his compenye in Ordre, commaundyng oder Lordis, and Knyghtis to preſent them, and to ſett on ther ſpores; and when the Kyng had dubbed al thoſe Knyghtys, he create a Purſuivant for the Prynce, and named hym *Walyngford*, And when the Prince had offred his Sword, and forgon his Spores, he went efft to the Kyngis cloſett, and put upon hym his Robes of Aſtate *&c.* ——All the oder new mad Knyghtys ſat along the on ſide the Chambre *&c.*—— After the largeſſe of the Prince, the largeſſe of the oder new made Knyghtys was alſo cryed, and after dyner, Sir *William Uvedall* was choſyn, and gave the Kyng thangkyngs in the name of all his Compeny *&c.*

In the Roll above quoted theſe are not entituled Knights of the Bath, *but only entred under the Style of* Knyghts made at the Creacion off Prynce *Arthur*.

Numb. LIX.

Jul. in Bibl. Cotton B. 12. *p.* 91. *Creation of the Duke of* York.

A. D. 1494, 10 *H.* 7. The King being determyned at *Alhalowyn* tide then folowing to holde and to kepe roially and ſolemply that feſt *&c.* and at that feſte to doube his iide ſon Knyght of the *Bath* and after to creat hym Duc of *Torc*, and there apon directed his lettres millive, and allſoe writts accordyng to the ſame, to divers nobles of this his Roiaulme to be of his ſonnis Bayne, and to receve thordre of Knyghthod, of wiche at his commandement came xxii, as ſchaull folow after in this Booke, and remanent were pardoned, or wer at their fynt *&c.* On the morne after *Simon* and *Jude* the Prince was conveyed to *Weſtm.* And on *Thurſday* the xxx day of *Octobre*, the ſaid Lord *Henry* ſerved the Kyng of towell, and the Lord *Haryngton* toke to ſey, and the Lord

Clyfford hild the baſen, and the Lord *Fitzwaren* bere the water, the Lord *Dacre* of the *Sowthe* bere the Kyngs potage, Mr. *Thomas Stanley*, and the remanent bere diſhes at the furſt courſe, or the iide, and the Lordes Serviturs, and the oder nobles, ſum dyned in the Chambre, and the remanent ſatt in the Hall, ſum at my Lord Stewards table, and ſum at maſt Controller Table, and after in like wiſe ſoo did they ſope, and when it was nyght, and that their Baynes were redy furſt in the Kyngs cloſett was the Lord *Henry's Bayne* roially dreſſed and a riche bed well empairelled, and therll of *Oxinford* red the advertiſement, and then the Kyng toke of the water and putt on his Schulder, and made a Croſſe and tryſt hit, and from thens went into the Quenes cloſſet, and likewyſe advertiſed the Lord *Haryngton*, and the Lord *Clyfford*, and from thens went into the Parlement Chambre where wer xx Baynes and beddis, wiche hadden ſparvors, and the beſt ordred that I have ſeen, and as folowyth, furſt in that chambre was the Lord *Fitzwaren*, the Lord *Dacre* of the *Southe*, Sir *Thomas Stanley* ſon and heir of the Lord *Strange*.

Sir *John Arundell*,
Sir *Walter Gryffithe*,
Sir *Gervoys* of *Cliffton*,
Sir *Edmond Traford*,
Sir *Robert Harrecourt*,
Sir *Henry Marney*,
Sir *Roger Neubourgh*,
Sir *Rauff Rider*,
Sir *Thomas Bawde*,
Sir *John Speke*,
Sir *Humfry Fullford*,
Sir *Robert Litten*,
Sir *Piers Eggecombe*,
Sir *Robert Clere*,
Sir *Thomas Fairfax*,
Sir *Richard Knyghtley*,
Sir *John Chooke*.

And after that the Kyng, of his Grace, and benevolens had viſeted them all in their Baynes, he departed into his Chambre, and thenne when they wer dry in their bedds they wer reveſted in theyre heremits wede, and ſoo departed to the Chapell, where they had Spices and their voidie, and the Sergent of Confexcionary had of every Knyght a noble, and on the Morne erley every man was ſhreven, and herde theyr meſſe, doying all Obſervance therto belongyng, retourned to thair beddys and delivered their Ruſſet gowne to the mynſtrells, and it was ſo well ordred and the howſe ſoo well voided, and thenn kept, that they toke good reſt, and anon after

after as it was day; and that they were awaked, they well and liberally paid the money to thofficiers of Armes, that is to ſey, the Lord *Harygnton* ſon and heyre of the Lord Marquis *Dorſet* l s. and every Baron above named xl s. and every che of the remanent xx s. *Item* they paid to the Sergent of thewry every man xx s iv d. *Item* they rewarded the Uſers, and the grome porter, and there Eſquiers of honnour liberally, and yet they made a commune purſe. When the tyme was come that it was the Kyngs pleaſir that they ſchuld ariſe, therll of *Oxinford*, therll of *Northumberland*, the Erll of *Eſſex*, the Lord *Daubney* with oder, whent to the ſaid Lord *Henry*, and from hym to the Lord *Harygnton* and therll of *Oxinford* great Chamberlayn of *Englond* gave him hys Shertt, and after hym the oder nobles did allſoo gyven part of theyr Abblements, and allſoo my Lord of *Oxinford* with the forſaid Lords honnored them with his honde, gevyng them all their Shertts in ordre as above, and after as there beddis ſtode in ordre, And immediatly after that they wer redy, they toke thair waye ſecretly by our Ladie of Pieu throught Saint *Stephin's* Chappell on to the ſteyr foote of the Ster Chambre end, where they toke their horſſes, wiche in died wer ſimple and ſoo lytill of valeur, and nott to the worſhipp of Knyghthod, and that the olde Ordonance was, that thoos hors empairelled after the Cuſtume ſchuld be Fee to the Mariſhall of *Englond*, or 100 s. and in his abcenſe to the Mariſhalls of the Kyngs hall, conſydering that thoos hors for the moſt part wer ſo ſimple, and for an example, that oder herafter ſchuld come with better hors, and more honnorably, for this oons my Lord Mariſhall by thavys of his chiff Counceill toke of every man xl s. for this tyme oonly and pardoned the value of iii l. and delivered there hors ageyn: and the Lord *William Courteney* bere the ſaid Lord *Henry* Swerde and ſpores, the pomel upward, and when he did alight of his hors, Sir *William Sanddis* bere hym to the Kyngs preſens, and there therll of *Oxinford* toke the ſwerd and ſpores, and preſented the right ſpore to the Kyng, and the Kyng commaunded the Duc of *Bokyngham* to putt hit on the right Hele of the ſaid Lord *Henry*, and in likewiſe the lifft ſpore to the Lord Marques of *Dorſett*, and thenne the Kyng gird his ſworde abowt hym, and after dubbed hym Knyght in maner accuſtumed, and then ſett hym upon the Table in tyme

the Kyng hade in like fourme doubed the Lords, and Sir *Thomas Stanley* &c. thenne Sir *William Sandys* bere my Lord *Henry* into the Chappell, and there at the high Aultre offred his ſwerd, and the Lords after in ordre, and after all the Knyghts as they wer doubed, and when my Lord was come out of the Qwere dore, the Kyngs maiſter Cooke toke his ſpores for his Fee, and in likewyſe of every oder Knyght and a Noble. My ſaid Lord dined in his owne Chambre, and the oder Lords, and new doubed Knyghtes dined in the Parlement Chambre att a long table, all on oon ſyde, and their Eſquiers of honnour kerved before them, and the Kyng licenſed them to ett their metts, bycauſe hyt was faſtyng day, and after diner all thes new made Knights went into a great Chambre, and did off their mantells, ſurcotts, gyrdils, and coyffes, aud delivered them to thofficiers of Armes, never better, and thenne clothed thaym in blew gownes with hodes, and immediately after they went to Counſeill, and choſe Sir *Rob. Litton* to gyve the Kyngs Grace thankyngs.

Writs under the Great Seal for creating theſe Knights are entred in C. 34. in Off. Arm. *p.* 127.

Stow. *p.* 477. *mentioneth theſe Perſons to have been then made Knights, but doth not add Knights of the* Bath.

In G. 2. penes me p. 347, 350 *are the Names of their Eſquires*

Knights of the *Bath* made at the Creation of the Duke of *York Henry* Anno 10 of *Hen.* 7, with their Eſquires of Honour on *Allhallowen* Even.

Knights	Eſquiers
The Duke of *York*	*Thomas Brandon* *Richard Pudſey*
Thomas Lord *Harrington*	*Richard Haſtings* *Thomas Digby*
Henry Lord *Clifford*	*William Morgan* *Edward Skelton*
Lord *Fitzwaren*	*Anthony Fetyplas* *Edward Wadham*
Lord *Dacres* of the *South*	*William Bulſtrode* *Thomas Woodſhawe*
Sir *John Arundell*	*John Parker* *William Trefry*

Sir

Sir *Thomas Stanley*	*Thomas Nevil* *George Bekynſall*
Sir *Walter Griffith*	*William Mornige* *Edward Beriſted*
Sir *Gervaſe Clifton*	His Brother *John Carlton*
Sir *Robert Hardecourt*	*John Burley* *Thomas Wynfrey*
Sir *Edward Trafford*	*John Amereton* *Robert Gethyns*
Sir *Henry Marney*	*Walter Wingefeild* *John Sharp*
Sir *Thomas Bawd*	*Henry Udall* *Richard Marſh*
Sir *John Speak*	*Chriſtopher Vyncent* *John Sigiſmond*
Sir *Roger Newburgh*	*Thomas Wathew* *Thomas Lukenor*
Sir *Ralph Rider*	*Thomas Ryder* *Morrice Butler*
Sir *Humfry Fulford*	*Chriſtopher Langdall* *William Fival*
Sir *Robert Lytton*	*Symon Dyſture* *Thomas Ferres*
Sir *Piers Edgcombe*	*Edward Aprice* *Henry Hamps*
Sir *Robert Clere*	*John Stanſhall* *William Paſton*
Sir *Thomas Fairfax*	*Hen. Wynſtowe* *Alex. Hogſton*
Sir *Richard Knightley*	*Richard Fiſher* *Thomas Mortymer*
Sir *John Cheoke*	*John Whiting* *John Stephyns*

In the abovementioned Rolle the Entry is only *Knyghts made at the Creacion of* Henry *Duke of* Yorke.

Numb. LX.

Knights of the Bayne *made at the Marriage of Prince* Arthur, 17 Nov. 1501. 17 Hen. vii.

The Lord *Wylloughby*,
The Lord *Clinton*,
The ſon and heir of the Lord *Haſtings*, *George*,
Sir *Thomas Fenys*,
Sir *Gryffythe* ap Sir *Ryes Thomas*
Sir *Robert Corbet*,
Sir *John Wogan*,
Sir *Thomas Laurence*,
Sir *Henry Rogers*,
Sir *William Walgraue*,
Sir *William Seymour*,
Sir *Robert Throgmorton*,
Sir *John Baſſet*,
Sir *Thomas Grenefeld*,
Sir *John Arundel* of *Treris*,
Sir *Roger Strange*,
Sir *John Scrop* of *Caſtlacomb*,
Sir *John Paulet*,
Sir *Walter Baskervyle*,
Sir *Robert Waterton*,
Sir *John Gyfford*,
Sir *John Aſton*,
Sir *William Fyloll*,
Sir *Thomas Ingilfeld*,
Sir *William Martyn*,
Sir *William Callwey*,
Sir *George Putnam*,
Sir *Nicholas Beron*,
Sir *Thomas Hawte*,
Sir *Richard Warr*,
Sir *Alnathe Malyverer*,
Sir *William Rede*,
Sir *John Trevelyan*,
Sir *John Foſter*,
Sir *Walter Strykeland*,
Sir *Thomas Long*,
Sir *John Philpot*,
Sir *John Lee* of *Wyltſhire*,
Sir *William Hartwell*,
Sir *Nicholas Gryffyn*,
Sir *Lancelot Thyrkyll*,
Sir *John Norton*,
Sir *Roger Ormeſton*,
Sir *George Feldynge*,
Sir *Thomas Curwyn*,
Sir *Hugh Loder*,
Sir *Thomas Sampſon*,
Sir *Richard Fowler*,
Sir *Thomas Woodhouſe*,
Sir *Philip Bothe*,
Sir *John Iwardby*,
Sir *Henry Frowyk*,
Sir *John Leghe* of *Stokewell*,
Sir *William Aſcu*,
Sir *Thomas Kemp*,
Sir *Morgan Kydwelle*,
Sir *John Gyllot*.

(58)

G. 2. penes me p. 348.

In the Roll they are ſtiled Knights of the Bath.

In the Ceremony of this Marriage, recited at large in M. 13. in Off. Arm. p. 50[b] 51. *it is remembred.* " And that night " ſuch as were appoyntid to be Knights of the *Bathe* re- " paired to their Baynes to the number of lviii, and there " that night the Kyng himſelf gaue unto fyue of them " ther

"ther chargs, after thordre and Lawe of the *Bathe*, and "commaunded therl of *Oxinford* gret Chamberleyn of *Eng-*"*lond*, under and by vertue of his auctoryte, after the ſame "fourme to encharge the remnaunt, *&c.*" The morrow of the *Wedenyſday* next folowyng, the Knights of the *Bathe*, that had entred into the beginnyng and certen requiſits apperteynyng aftir the Lawe of Armys unto thordre, and degree of the *Bathe* were warnyd, and aſſigned unto their attendaunce uppon the Kinges, grace to haue and enjoye the perfecte accompliſhement of all the neceſſary poyntes, and dueties to that Solempne, and highe Knighthod apperteynyng, and ſo they were redy, and gaue their diligens, and wayting with ther horſys, ſwords, with their ſporys uppon their helys, and that ſhuld be for them nedfull, and there were by the Kings hand in his great chambre at his Carpet, and under his ryche clothe of Eſtate dubyd, and girtid with their ſwords: They ſhuld aredyn alſo that tyme in their rialtie, but of that they were pardoned, bycauſe the weder was not clere, ne convenient bycauſe of moch wete. There was alſo at that ſeaſon addid by the Kings will and pleaſure xviii moo Knights, that had not been in the Baynes, and were dubyd Knights with the reherſid nombre of lviii. So in all there were threſcore and xvi, whereof ſo great a nombre, and multitude haue not been ſeen had tofore in *Englond* at oon ſeaſon made.

NUMB. LXI.

Creatio Principis Henr. 19 Hen. vii. 18 Febr. *in the Roll formerly cited of Knights.*

The Viſcount *Liſle*,
The Lord *Dacres* of the North
Thomas,
Sir *Brian Stapilton*,
Sir *Rauff Gray*,
Sir *Mylys Buſſi*,
Sir *Edward Pomery*,
Sir *John Mordant*,
Sir *James Hubert*.

NUMB. LXII.

W T. in Offic. Arm. p. 55[b]

Deviſe for the Coronation of Hen. viii.

——Alſo in a Rayſing —— the ancyent Nobles of *England*, the King hath appointed Twenty ſix of the moſt able perſonnes, and of Honourable Blood, and auncient houſes comen, being noe Knights of this his Realme, to take the order of Knighthood,

Knighthood, and to repare unto the *Tower* of *London* the twenty ſecond day of *June*, and that day to ſerue the King of his Dinner, and they that ſhall bee made Knights to beare Diſhes unto the Kinge that ſaid day, in token that they ſhall never bare none after that day, and to be made Knights of the *Bathe* in the *Towre* of *London* the twenty third day of *June* next comeing, called the Even of his Coronation, and that all manner things that belongeth to ſoe great a Tryumphe may be done Honorably and orderly diſpoſed, whoſe names doth followe in Order, as they were made, *viz.*

Richard Ratclyff Lord *Fytzwater*
The Lord *Scroope* of *Bolton*,
The Lord *Fitzhugh*,
The Lord *Mountjoye*,
The Lord *Dawbeney*,
The Lord *Broke*,
Sir *Morris Barkeley*,
Sir *Henry Clyfford*,
Sir *Thomas Knevet*,
Sir *Andrew Wyndſor*,
Sir *Thomas Parre*,
Sir *Thomas Boulleyne*,
Sir *Richard Wentworth*,
Sir *Henry Owtred*,
Sir *Francis Cheny*,
Sir *Henry Wyotte*,
Sir *George Haſtings*,
Sir *Thomas Metham*,
Sir *Thomas Bedingfeild*,
Sir *John Shelton*,
Sir *Gyles Allington*,
Sir *John Trevanyon*,
Sir *William Crowmer*,
Sir *John Heydon*,
Sir *Edward Oxenbridge*,
Sir *Henry Sackveyle*,
Sir *Stephen Jenings*, then Mayre of *London*.

The Order of the Creations of the Knights of the *Bathe* to be underſtande by the Herraulds, and to be conveyed.

That done the Kinge at his pleaſure may goe unto his dinner, and that day it hath binn accuſtomed, ſuch noble perſonnes, as are then made Knights of the *Bathe* in order, as they were made to ſyte in the Hall at one Board, yf it may bee, or at two Boards, and there to bee ſerved honourably, and their Squires to attend them.

Numb. LXIII.

W T. in Offic. Arm. E. x *penes me p.* 19. *E.* xi *p.* 207[b]

The Receiving, Conveying, and Coronation of the Queene Anne [*of* Bullen, *on* Frydaye 30 May 1533, 25 Hen. 8.]

In the morrowe at dynner, ſerved the King all ſuch as were appoynted by his Highnes to bee Knights of the *Bathe*, which after dinner were brought by theire Chambers, and that

that night were bathed, and ſhreven, according to the old uſage of *England*, and the next day in the morneing, the King dubed them according to the Ceremonyes thereto belonging, whoſe names heere enſue.

The Marques *Dorſett*,
The Earle of *Derby*,
The Lord *Clifford* [ſon and heir to the Earl of *Cumberland*,]
The Lord *Fitzwater* [ſon and heir to therle of *Suſſex*,]
The Lord *Haſtings* [ſon and heir to therle of *Huntington*,]
The Lord *Montegle*,
The Lord *Vaux*,
Sir *Henry Parker* [ſon and heir to the Lord *Morley*,]
Sir *William Windſore* [ſon and heir to the Lord *Windſore*,]
Sir *John Mordaunt* [ſon and heir to the Lord *John Mordaunt*]
Sir *Francis Weſton*,
Sir *Thomas Arundell*,
Sir *John Hudleſton*,
Sir *Thomas Poynings*,
Sir *Henry Savell*,
Sir *George Fitzwilliams* of *Lyncolneſhire*,
Sir [*Henry*] *Fermey*. *Hollinſhead*, p. 931.

Their Names in G. 2. penes me, p. 354.

Numb. LXIV.

E. xiii. penes me, p. 54.

The Apparel for the Bathe *for the Noble Prince, Prince* Edward.

Imprimis, a longe goune of Ruſſet ſatten made in maniere of an hermitts goune.

Item, a mantell and Circote of redde ſatten, or velvett furred, and edged with whyte mynever with longe laſes of whyte ſilke, with two taſſells for the ſame with a pere of whyte gloues hanginge at them.

Item, a longe blew violet goun furred and edged with whyte mynever, lyke unto the robe of a Bacheler of the Law, and a laſe of whyte ſilke ſett on the lefte ſholder.

Item, a Coyfe, and a pere of nether corſſs.

Item, a pere of hoſe and ſilke blacke, the ſolles of black lether called * Chaſſembles.

Item, a pere of ſpurres of copper and gilte.

* *That is*, Chauſſes Semelles de cuir, *mentioned in the Ceremonial.*

Item, a ſwourde, the hilts gilte, lyk an arming ſwourd, the ſcabbard and girdell of whyt velvett withoute any harneys.

Then the Apparel for the creation of the noble Prince, Prince *Edward*, is ſpecified, and alſo the robes of the Parlement for the noble Prince, Prince *Edward*.

Ibid. p. 56[b]

Item, the Kings Highneſſe muſt directe his Lettres to be made to ſuche, as ſhal be made Knights of the *Bathe*, and to receive the Order of Knighthood in the mornenge of the ſayde Creacion, and *Garter* to have theire names to prepare for ſuche things, as to that apperteinethe.

NUMB. LXV.

G. 2. *penes me*, p. 355.

For the Bath *at the Coronation of K.* Edward VI. Knights nomynate of the *Bathe* the daye of the Kings Majeſties Coronation, the xx daye of *February*, *Anno* 1546.

E. xi. p. 217[b]

The Duke of *Suffolke*,
The Earl of *Hertford*,
The Earl of *Oxford*, [*Hertford* in E. xi.]
The Earl of *Ormond*,
The Lord *Matravers*,
The Lord *Talbot*,
The Lord *Strange*,
The Lord *Herberte*,
The Lord *Lyſley*,
The Lord *Cromewell*,
The Lord *Haſtings*,
The Lord *Charles Brandon*,
The Lord *Scropes* ſon,
The Lord *Windſor* ſon & heire,
Sir *Francis Ruſſell*,
Sir *Anthonie Browne*,
Sir *Richard Devereux*,
Sir *Henry Seimour*,
Sir *John Gates*,
Sir *Anthony Cook* of *Eſſex*,
Sir *Alex. Vmpton* of *Oxford*,
Sir *George Norton*,
Sir *Valentine Knightley*,
Sir *Robert Lytton*,
Sir *George Vernon*,
Sir *John Porte*,
Sir *Thomas Joſſelyn*,
Sir *Edmond Moleneux*, ſergeant of the law,
Sir *Chriſtopher Barker*, *Garter* King at Armes,
Sir *James Halles*,
Sir *William Bapthorpe*,
Sir *Thomas Brykenell*,
Sir *Thomas Nevell*,
Sir *Angell Mareyn Italien de Cremona*,
Sir *John Holcrofte*,
Sir *John Cutt*,
Sir *Henry Terrell*,
Sir *William Sherington*,
Sir *Wimond Carewe*,
Sir *William Sneath*.

W. T.

W. T. p. 109b *Ceremonial of the Coronation of* Ed. VI. —— It was ordained, that a certain nomber of Knights ſhould be made inſtead of the *Bath*, becauſe the time was ſoe ſhort, that they could not bee made of the *Bath*, according to the Ceremonyes thereunto appertayneing.

Then it was at the ſame time ordered by the Kings Royal Majeſty, with the advice of his moſt noble Councel, that they ſhould be made by his Highneſſe, being crowned inſtead of the *Bath*, as aforeſaid, and ſoe Sir *William Paget* Secretary did read their names, and they were called by *Guarter* Principal King at Arms, to receiue, as after followeth, *&c.*

Then becauſe they were nominate of the *Bath*, and made with ſoe greate Royaltie, they were commanded to pay the Dewtyes of money, every of them after theire Degrees, and Eſtates, dowble the ſume of other Knights.

Acta Conc. Priv. 1 *Ed.* 6. *Sunday* 6 *Febr.* at the *Tower*, this day alſo according to thorder concluded upon by thautorite aforeſaid, and by vertue of the Kings Majeſties letters Patents under the great Seale made forth unto the Lord Protector, autoriſing him ſo to doe, Our ſaid ſovereign lord and Maſter that now is, receiued the high and Noble Order of Knighthood by the ſaid lord Protectors hands, *&c.*

NUMB. LXVI.

Pat 1 Mar. *p.* 2. *m.* 10 *d.*

Mary, by the Grace of God, *&c.* To all men, to whome theſe preſents ſhall come, Gretinge.

Where, for the more adornement of our Kingly Eſtate, and dignitye Riall, and for the nobility of blode, good ſervice, and other good qualityes of many our ſervants, and other ſubjects, We be reſolved to call certain of them to the ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wit, that, for the ſpecial truſte, and confidence, which we have repoſed in our right truſtie and right well-belovid Coſyn and Counſealoure *Henry* Erle of *Arundell*, we have appoynted, and by theſe preſentes do appoint, and auctoriſe him, for Us, and in our Name, and by our auctority, to doo, and excercyſe everie thinge and thinges in our behalfe to be doone and excerciſed, for the full making of ſuch, and ſo manye perſons Knightes, within

the time of two daies next enſuing the date hereof, as by us ſhall be named, or by himſelf may be thought mete, ſo as he exceede not in the whole the Number of Threeſcore.

And our farther pleaſure is, that everie perſon, ſo to be advaunced, or made Knight by our ſaid Coſyn and Councelloure, ſhall have, hold, and enjoy the ſaid Order of the Knightwood, with the Name, Title, Dignitie, and all other Prerogatives thereunto-belonginge, in as large and ample manner, as anie other Knighte, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the tyme of oure Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

In cujus rei, &c.

Teſte Regina apud *Weſtm.* decimo ſeptimo die *Octobris.*

Per ipſum Regem.

Printed in Rymer, *vol. xv. p.* 350.

Numb. LXVII.

W. T. in Officio Armorum, p. 123.

Coronation of Queen Mary.

Alſoe in rayſing the auncient Nobles of *England*, the Queenes Highnes appoynted xv of the moſt able perſons, and of Honorable Blood and Auncient houſes, being noe Knights of this her realme, to take the Order of Knighthood, and to repayre unto her *Towre* of *London* on *Fryday* the 28th of *September*, the day after her Graces coming thither. And there according to the Order every man to beare unto the Queenes Majeſtie at her firſt courſe for dynner, a Diſh of meate, who after were brought to theire Chamber, and the ſame night were Bathed and Shrevin, according to the olde uſage of *England*, and the next day in the morninge after Maſſe, in the Queenes Majeſties Preſence, being under her Clothe of Eſtate in the Chamber of Preſence, were dubbed Knights by the Earle of *Arrundell*, Lord Steward of the Queenes houſe, which had Commiſſion of her Grace to doe the ſame, and that according to the Ceremony thereto belonging, whoſe names hereafter doe enſewe, and the names of the Eſquiers which did attend upon them, *viz.*

George White and *George Terrell*	The Earl of *Devonſhire*,
Ralph Chandler and Mr. *Drewry*	The Earl of *Surreys* ſon,

Mr.

Mr *Tanner* and *William Riſer*	The Lord of *Cardiff.*
Mr *Arundell* and Mr *Norreys*	The Lord of *Burgavenny.*
Mr *Frankwell*, Mr *Evered*,	The Lord *Barkley.*
Mr *Hogat*, Mr *Markham*,	The Lord *Lomley.*
Mr *Harman*, Mr *Brakenbury*,	The Lord *Mountjoy.*
Mr *Winkefeild*, Mr *Jo. Barkley*,	Sir *Hen. Clynton* [ſon of Lord *Clinton*]
Robert Alee, *Richard Foſter*,	Sir *William Pallet* [ſon of Lord St. *Johns*]
Richard Wight, Mr *Sackfeild*,	Sir *Hugh Rich* [ſon of Lord *Rich*]
Robert Warner, *Edmond Liſley*,	Sir *Henry Paget* [ſon of Lord *Paget*]
George Nevel, Mr *Smyth*,	Sir *Henry Parker.*
Robert Grewe, Mr *Manwayring*,	Sir *Rob. Rocheſter* (Comptroller)
George Ferningham, Mr *Legens*,	Sir *Henry Ferningham.*
Mr *Dauncy*, *Anthony Maxell*,	Sir *William Dormer.*

The Order of theire Ceremony aforeſaid, was underſtood by the Office of Armes, and ſoe convey'd unto the place appoynted for them to dyne, and that every man in order, as they were made Knights ſate at one Table, And as the Order was all on one ſyde, and there were ſerved honorably, and theire Eſquiers attendant on them till after dynner, and then tooke theire leave every man of his Knight, of whome he had the Governance, and received their Fees according as the Officers of Armes declared by theire antient Preſident.

Numb. LXVIII.

G. 2 penes me p. 360.

The Order of the Knights of the Bath *at the Coronation of Queen* Mary.

Firſt on *Friday* all the Knights came into the *Tower*, and came into the Chamber of Preſence, and there the Gentlemen Uſhers did ſweare them, and then all they did goe and eate a morſell of meate, And at the ſecond courſe every one of them did beare a diſh to the Queene, and did kneele downe, and did take the Sayes. And then the Gentlemen Uſhers did lead them into the Great *Tower*, whereas the *Bath* was, and ſo there they remayned till ſixe a clocke at night, and then the table was covered, and a Bankett ſett on it, And then every Knight

Knight was ledd betwixt the Eſquires unto the ſaid Banquet, And ſoe they were ſett all on one ſyde, and the Eſquires did waite on them; And when the banquet was ended, their Eſquires did lead them into the Bath chamber agen with Harrolds going before them, And all the Banket tyme the Sagbuts and Violls did playe; And after that all the ſaid Knights were ſhaven, ſaving thoſe that the Quene did pardon, And that done, they did put off all their Clothes, and did putt on a lynnen Breech, and ſo ther Feete were waſched, and ſatt in the Bath all nakyd, till that my Lord of *Arundell*, my Lord Chamberleyn, the Maſter of the Horſes, Secretary *Peter* and Sir *Thomas Wharton* preſenting the Quenes perſon did come and reade to them this ſerten Othe. Right Dear Brother Grett worſhip be this Ordre unto every of you, and Almighty God give you prayſing of all Knighthood, Thys ys the ordre of Knighthood, You ſhall honour God above all things, You ſhall be ſtedfaſt in the Faith of Holly Church, and the ſame maynteyne, and defende to your Power, You ſhall love your Soveraigne above all erthly Cretures, And for your Soveraignes right live and die, You ſhall defend Widowes, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, You ſhall ſuffer no extorcyon, as farr forth as you maie, nor ſitt in place, where any wrongfull judgement ſhall be given to your knowledge, and as great Honour be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your Progenitors; and that done they went all to their bedds, and ſo ſlept till about iv of the clocke in the morning, and then they did ariſe, being ſoundyd with the miniſtrells, and did putt on their clothes and apparell Ruſſett, like Bachelors of the Lawe with a Hood furryd with white Menyver, and being leade with both their Eſquires to the Chappell, and then ymediatly were ſhriven, and then ſertain ſervis and maſſe was ſaid, All they did offer a little taper with two pence, or a groat in it; And that don, all they received the Sacrament, and then they were led holme againe into ther Chambers, whereas the Bathing tubbs were taken awaie, and ſo they went unto their bedds, and about eight of the Clock on the *Saterdaie* there came ſerteyn Knights, and did putt on their Shirts and doublits, and ſo they did ariſe and make them ready, and then every one of them did put on a Cyrcott of red Taffeta, and mantle of red Taffeta with a great lace of white ſilke with a grett knopp of gold thereuppon, And a

paire

paire of gloves tyed in the mideſt of the ſaid lace. And about eleaven of the clocke of the ſame daie, they went downe lede betwixt two Knights, every one of them having a Page well appointed bearing a ſword with a gilt pomell and a white Scabert of Velvet without any Chape, having a paire of gilte Spurrs hanging about the hylts of the ſeyd Sworde, and their two Eſquires going before them, and entering out of the ſaid Tower or chamber, every Page and his Knight did leape on their horſes, the Knyghts horſes having every one a blacke lether ſaddle with white egge, a longe rayne, and a broad rayne eggyd with white alſo, and the headſtall of the bridle having a Croſſe of latyn guilded, and the Patrell having a Croſſe likewiſe, And ſo they did ride to the Hall dore, and ther did alight and ſo went into the Hall, and ther ſtood a both Sides on the Hall, till the Lord *Chamberleyn* ſent to the Quene, and anſwer being brought from the Quene, the Page and his two Eſquires went before him, hee being ledd betwixt his two Knights upp into the Chamber of Preſence, where the Quene did come out, And then he with his two Knights and his Page and his two Eſquires before him did make, coming to the Quene iii Corſeys, and knelyd downe all before the Quene, and the Page did kiſſe the Sword, and delivered it to my Lord *Chamberleyn* kneling next to the Quene, and the Quene did take the Sword, and did geyrd it about the ſaid Knyght, and delivered to the two Knights that did lead him the Spurrs, and did comnand them to put on the Spurrs, and laſt of all comandyd to kiſſe his Knee, the one the right, and the other the left Knee, and then they did hold their gloves betwixt their fingers, over their heads, And my Lord of *Arundell* being Lord Great Maſtre did laye his hand uppon his Shoulder, ſaying, Hear, be trewe Knyghte, and ſo did arife, And ſo after all they had ſo don, they did make humble Courteſies, and were ledd downe, as they came up, ſaving their Pages, and ſo went to the Chapell, and their did offer upp their Swords unto the Prieſt, and ſo were brought out of the Chapell ledd with their Knights, their Eſquiers then folowinge them, And at their entring out of the Chapell their ſtood a rounde table coveryd with a white Cloth, And the Quenes maſter Cooke with a grett dreſſing knife, ſaying theis words Sir Knight, ſee thou bee a true Knight and to performe thine Oath, or elſe I will ſtrike the off by theis Spores, and

ſo

ſo received all their Sporres, and vi *s.* viii *d.* in money, and then they all came into the Hall, and did ſett downe all on one ſyde, and were ſervyd with three Corſys at their dynners, And that don, they did putt off their red - - - - - - - and did give it to the Harholds, and then every one of them did put on a violet gowne cloſe furryd with white - - - - - and a hode like a maſter of Art hoode, and a white - - - - ſilke without aglets, which was tyed on the left Shoulder - - - - they take their horſys, and did ryde togyther through *London*, till they came to *Whitehall* next before the Counſell, and at night they changed into their owne apparell, and the next daie of the Coronation all they ſerved the Queene, every man bearing a diſch, and ſo they made an ende bearing the iv courſes.

Numb. LXIX.

Pat. 1 Eliz. *p.* 4. *m.* 5. *d.*

Eilzabeth, by the grace of God, Quene of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defendour of the Faith *&c.* To all men, to whome theis preſentes ſhall come Greting.

Whereas, Wee

Mynding to procede to the ſolemnitie of our coronation, in ſuch and like honorable ſorte, as in the Coronation of oure Progenitors hath been accuſtomed, and as to oure Eſtate, and Dignitie Royall apperteyneth, have, both for the more Adornement of the Feaſt of our ſaid coronation, and for the nobilitie of blood, good ſervice, and other good Qualities of many our ſervauntes, and other Subjects, reſolved to call certain of them to th'ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wete, that, for the ſpecial truſt and confidence, which we have repoſed in our right Truſtie and right beloved Coſen and Counſaylour, *Henry* Erl of *Arundell*, Lord Steward of our Houſehold, we have appoynted, and by theis preſentes do appoint and auctoriſe him, for us, and in our name, and by our auctoritie, not onlie to do and excerciſe everie thinge, and thinges, on our behalfe *to be* done and excerciſed for the full making of thoſe Knightes of the *Bathe*, whome we have cauſed to be ſpeciallye called for that purpoſe, but alſo to make and ordeyn ſuch, and ſo many other perſons *Knights* within the tyme of two daies next enſuing the date hereof, as by us ſhall be named, or by himſelf may be thought mete;

mete; ſo as he exceede not in th' ole the Nomber of Thirtie.

And our further Pleaſure is, that every Perſon, ſo to be advaunced, or made Knight by our ſaid Coſen and Councelour, ſhall have, houlde, and enyoye the ſaid order of Knighthood, with the name, title, and Dignitye, and all other Prerogatyves thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like degree, being made in the tyme of any our Progenitours, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

In Witneſs whereof *&c.*

Witneſs ourſelf at *Weſtm.* the xiv day of *Jannary,*

Per ipſam Reginam.

Printed in Rymer *vol. xv. p.* 497.

Numb. LXX.

1 *Partit. Book in the* Herald's Office, *p.* 198.

Knights of the Bath *at the Coronation of Qu.* Eliz.

The Lord *Darcy* of the *North,*
The Lord *Sheffeild,*
The Lord *Darcy* of *Chiche,*
Sir *Robert Rich,*
Sir *Roger North,*
Sir *John Souwche,*
Sir *Nycholas Poynes,*
Sir *John Barkeley,*
Sir *Edward Umpton,*
Sir *Henry Weſton,*
Sir *George Speke.*

Numb. LXXI.

Knights of the Bath *made at the Coronation of King* James, *which Coronation was on* 25 July 1603.

C. 15. penes me.

Sir *Philip Herbert,* after Earle of *Montgomery.* [*Shropſhire.*]
Thomas Barkley, Lord *Barkley.* [*Glouceſterſhire.*]
Sir *William Evers,* after Lord *Evers.* [*Yorkſtire.*]
Sir *George Wharton,* after Lord *Wharton.* [*Yorkſhire.*]
Sir *Robert Rich,* after Earle of *Warwicke.* [*Eſſex.*]
Sir *Robert Carre,* of the Bed-chamber of his Majeſty, after Earl of *Somerſet.* [*Northumberland.*]
Sir *John Egerton,* after Earle of *Bridgewater.* [*Cheſhire.*]
Sir *Henry Compton,* third Brother to *William* Earle of *Northampton.*]

Sir *Thomas Erskine*, ſonne to the Earle of *Marre*. [*Starling.*]
Sir *William Auſtuddur*. [*Lowdean.*]
Sir *Patricke Murray*. [*Murray.*]
Sir *James Hay* Lord *Tſter*. [*Glaſcow.*]
Sir *John Lyndſey*. [*Lowdean*]
Sir *Richard Preſton*, after Earle of *Deſmond*. [*Northumberland*]
Sir *Oliver Cromwell* of *Huntingtonſhire*. [*Huntington.*]
Sir *Edward Stanly* of *Lancaſhire*.
Sir *William Herbert* of *Montgomery*, after Lord *Powys*. [*Montgomery.*]
Sir *Foulke Grevell*, after Lord *Brooke*. [*Warwick.*]
Sir *Francis Fanne*, after Earl of *Weſtmerland*. [*Kent.*]
Sir *Robert Chicheſter*, of *Devonſhire*.
Sir *Robert Knowles* of *Berkſhire*.
Sir *William Clifton* of *Notinghamſhire*. [*Huntingdon*] [*Somerſet.*]
Sir *Francis Forteſcue* of *Devonſhire*. [*Bucks*] [*Oxon.*]
Sir *Edward Corbet* of *Shropſhire*.
Sir *Edward Herbert*, after Lord of *Caſtle-Iland* in *Ireland*, and Baron *Chirbury*. [*Montgomery.*]
Sir *Thomas Langton* of *Lancaſhire*.
Sir *William Pope* of *Oxfordſhire*.
Sir *Arthur Hopton* of *Somerſetſhire*.
Sir *Charles Moriſon* Knight and Baronet of *Hartforſhire*. [*Northampton.*]
Sir *Francis Leigh* of *Warwickeſhire*. [*Surrey.*]
Sir *Edward Mountagu*, after Lord *Mountague* of *Boughton* in *Northamptonſhire*. [*Leiceſterſhire.*]
Sir *Edward Stanhop* of *Torkeſhire*. [*Northampton.*]
Sir *Peter Manwood* of *Kent*.
Sir *Robert Harley* of *Hereford ſhire*.
Sir *Thomas Strickland* of *Torkeſhire*.
Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton* of *Northamtonſhire*.
Sir *Edward Griffin* of *Northamtonſhire*. [*Leiceſterſhire.*]
Sir *Robert Bevill* of *Huntingtonſhire*.
Sir *William Welby* of *Lincoln*, in C. 15. and in G. 2. *p.* 366 *b.*
Sir *Edward Harwell* of *Worceſterſhire*.
Sir *John Mallet* of *Somerſetſhire*.
Sir *Walter Aſton* of *Staffordſhire* Knight and Baronet.
Sir *Henry Gawdy* of *Eſſex*. [*Norfolk.*]

Sir

Sir *Richard Muſgrave* of *Weſtmerland* Knight and Baronet. [*Cumberland.*]
Sir *John Stowell* of *Somerſetſhire.*
Sir *Richard Ancots* of *Lincolneſhire.*
Sir *Thomas Leeds* of *Suffolke.* [*Suſſex.*]
Sir *Thomas Jermyn* of *Norfolke.* [*Suffolk.*]
Sir *Ralph Hare* of *Hartford.* [*Norfolk.*]
Sir *William Forſter* of *Buckinghamſhire.* [*Berks.*]
Sir *George Speake* of *Somerſetſhire.*
Sir *George Hyde* of *Barkeſhire.* [*Devonſhire.*]
Sir *Anthony Felton* of *Suffolke.*
Sir *Anthony Brown* of *Northamptonſhire.* [*Lincoln.*]
Sir *Thomas Wiſe* of *Eſſex.* [*Devon.*]
Sir *Robert Chamberlaine* of *Oxfordſhire.*
Sir *Anthony Palmer* of *Suffolke.* [*Suſſex.*] [*Kent.*]
Sir *Edward Heron* of *Lincolnſhire.*
Sir *Henry Burton* of *Leiceſterſhire.* [*Surry.*]
Sir *Robert Barker* of *Suffolke.*]
Sir *William Norris* of *Lancaſhire.*
Sir *Roger Bodenham* of *Hereford ſhire.*

Number 62.

King James 22 July *in his firſt Year commiſſions four of the Nobility to exerciſe every Thing for the full making of Knights of the* Bath, *and to make ſo many other Perſons Knights, within the Time of two Days next enſuing the Date, as by the King ſhall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them, ſo as they exceed not in the whole the Number of threeſcore.* G. 2. penes me *p.* 330.

NUMB. LXXII.

G. 2. penes me p. 263.

James &c. To all *&c.* Greeting, Whereas we minding to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation in ſuch like honourable Sort, as in the Coronations of Our Progenitors hath been accuſtumed, and as to Our State, and Dignity Royal apperteineth, have, both for the more Advancement of the Feaſt of our ſaid Coronation, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service, and other good Qualityes of many our Servants and other our Subjects, reſolved to call certain of them to the Order of Knighthood, We let you weet, that for the eſpetiall Truſt and Confidence, which we have repoſed in Our Right

Truſty, and well beloved Couſins and Councellors, *Edward* Earl of *Worceſter* our Earl Marſhal of *England*, *Charles* Earl of *Nottingham* our High Admiral of *England*, *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk* our Chamberlain of our Houſe, and our right Truſty and welbeloved *John* Lord *Lumley*, We have appointed, and by theſe Preſents do appoint, and authorize them, or any three of them, or any two of them for us, and in our Name, and by our Authority, not only to do and exerciſe every thing and things in our behalf to be done and exerciſed for the full making of Knights of the *Bath*, whome we have cauſed to be eſpetially callen for that purpoſe, but alſo to make and ordain ſuch, and ſo many other Perſons *Knights* within the time of two days next enſuing the Date hereof, as by us ſhall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them may be thought meet, ſo as they exceed not in the whole the Number of Sixty: And our farther Pleaſure is, that every Perſon to be advanced, or made Knight by our ſaid Commiſſioners, or any three, or two of them ſhall have, hold, and enjoy the ſaid Order of Knighthood with the Name, Title, Dignity, and all Prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the time of any our Progenitors have, and of right ought to have had, and enjoyed. In Witneſſe *&c.* 22 *July*, anno regni *Angliæ* &c. primo & *Scotiæ* xxxvi.

Numb. LXXIII.

C. 15. *p.* 19.

On *Saterday* being *Twelfth* Even the fifth of *January* 1604. [2 *Jac.* 1.] at *Whitehall*, *Charles* Duke of *Albany* the King's Son was made Knight of the *Bath*, and with him xi others,

Charles, Duke of *Yorke*.

Sir *Robert Bartu*, Lord *Willoughby* of *Eresby*, after Earl of *Lindſey*.

Sir *William Compton*, Lord *Compton*, after Earl of *Northampton*.

Sir *Grey Bridges*, Lord *Chandos*.

Sir *Francis Norris*, Lord *Norris*, of *Ricot*, after Earl of *Berkſhire*.

Sir *William Cecill* [Son and Heir to the Viſcount *Cranborne*,] after Earl of *Salisbury*.

Sir

Sir *Allan Percy*, brother to *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*.
Sir *Francis Mannors*, after Earl of *Rutland*.
Sir *Francis Clifford*, brother to the Earl of *Cumberland*, C. 15. and alſo in *G.* 2. *p.* 367.
Sir *Thomas Somerſet* of *Caſſell* in *Ireland*, [ſecond ſon to the Earl of *Worceſter*.]
Sir *Thomas Howard*, [ſecond ſonne to the Earl of *Suffolk*] after Earl of *Berkeſhire*.
Sir *John Harrington*, ſonne [and heir] to *John* Lord *Harrington* of *Exton*.

NUMB. LXXIV.

G. 2. *penes me*, *p.* 375.

The Duke, being but four Years old, was carried, and in the Morning had on his Hermits Weeds, not of Fryers gray, (as the reſt of the Knights had) but of a Ruſſet Sattin; after Service they all ſhifted into Robes of Crimſon Taffata, wherein they were made, ſat at Dinner in, and at Evening Prayer offered up their Swords, which they preſently redeemed with an Angel in Gold, the next Day they were all in Purple Sattin, wherein they dined, having a white Lace on the Shoulder. The next Day following (being Twelfth-Day and *Sunday*) the ſaid Duke was created Duke of *York*, in Manner and Form following, *&c.*

Shortly after the ſaid Duke, and the Noblemen aforeſaid came into the great Chamber, where they all dined, at a Table ſet croſs, a little beneath the Cloth of Eſtate, then there placed, and at a Side-Table, over-againſt the Chimney ſat the Knights of the *Bath*, *&c.* *Memorand.* That after the Knights of the *Bath* came the firſt time out of the Chappell, they had their Oaths given them in the Gallery, and after they went, and ſhifted themſelves into their Robes of Crimſon Taffata, as before.

NUMB. LXXV.

1 *Cerem. in Offic. Arm. p.* 220.

The ſecond of June [1610.] *theſe undernamed and choſen to be of the Order of the* Bath, *by Bill ſigned with the King's Hand, repaired to* Durham-*Houſe in the Afternoon.*

Henry Vere, Earl of *Oxford*.
George Lord *Gordon*, [ſon and heir to the Earl of *Huntley*] after Marquiſs *Huntley*.

Henry

Henry Lord *Clifford*, after Earl of *Cumberland*.

Henry Ratcliffe, Lord *Fitzwater* [ſon and heir to the Earl of *Suſſex*.]

Edward Bourcher, [Lord *Fitzwarren*] after Earl of *Bath*.

Francis Lord *Hay*, [ſon and heir to the Earl of *Athol* in *Scotland*] after Earl of *Carlile*.

James Lord *Erskin*, [ſon and heir to the Earl of *Mar* in *Scotland*.]

Thomas Windſor, then Lord *Windſor*.

Thomas Lord *Wentworth*, after Earl of *Cleveland*.

Sir *Charles Somerſet*, [third] ſonne to *Edward* Earl of *Worceſter*.

Sir *Edward Somerſet*, [fourth] ſonne to the ſaid Earl of *Worceſter*.

Sir *Thomas Ratcliffe*, ſonne to the Earl of *Suſſex*.

Sir *Francis Stuart*, ſonne to the Earl of *Murray*.

Sir *William Styward*, ſonne to the Lord *Blantyre*.

Sir *Ferdinando Sutton*, eldeſt ſonne to the Lord *Dudley*.

Sir *Henry Cary*, [ſonne and heir to the Lord *Hunſdon*] after Earl of *Dover*.

Sir *Oliver St. John*, Lord *St. John* [ſonne and heir to the Lord *St. John* of *Bletſo*] after Earl of *Bullingbrook*.

Sir *Gilbert Gerrard* [ſonne and heir to the Lord *Gerrard*] after Lord *Gerrard* of *Gerrard Bromeley*.

Sir *Charles Stanhop* [ſonne and heir to the Lord *Stanhop*] after Lord *Stanhop* of *Harington*.

Sir *Edward Bruce* [ſonne and heir to the Lord *Kinloſſe*] after Lord *Kinloſſe*.

Sir *William Sidney*, Lord *Sidney*, [ſonne to the Viſcount *Liſle*] after Earl of *Leiceſter*.

Mavin Touchet [ſecond] ſonne to *George* Lord *Audley*, Earl of *Caſtle-Haven* in *Ireland*.

Sir *Peregrine Bartu*, brother to the Earl of *Lindſey*.

Sir *Henry Rich*, ſecond brother to the Earl of *Warwick*, after Earl of *Holland*.

Sir *Edward Sheffield*, [ſonne and heir to the Lord *Sheffield*] after Earl of *Mulgrave*.

Sir *William Cavendiſh*, [brother to the Lord *Ogle*] after made Viſcount *Mansfield*, and Earl of *Newcaſtle*.

Theſe

Theſe aboute ſix of the Clock, being ſet in order by the Kings of Arms, proceeded ſingly in their uſual apparell (the younger foremoſt) about the Hall, and when they aſcended the ſtairs, they pared together two and two, and ſo entred the Chapell, the Heralds ſtanding upon the halfe-pace, while they did their obeyſance toward the Communion-Table: When they had ſtood a little before their Stalls, with the like obeyſance, they aſcended into theirs in ſuch manner, as the Knights of the *Garter*, and heard Evenſong, and returned to the Chamber appointed for their ſupper, with Eſcutcheons of their ſeveral Arms, and after to their Baths.

The next morning, being *Sunday*, they put on the Hermetical Garments, which were girt unto them, and with their Coifs of linen with their hoods plucked over, proceeded in like manner, but between their Eſquires or Governors, the Muſitians and the Heralds preceding; at the ſtair-head they paired, and ſo entred, the younger firſt, and placed themſelves accordingly as the night before; when ſervice was ended, the Earl of *Worceſter* Earl Marſhal for the time, the Earl of *Suffolk* lord Chamberlain, who came into the Chapel (at Service time) ſitting upon a forme on the ſouth ſide miniſtred the Oath unto them, *Garter* holding the Book, firſt to the Earl of *Oxenford*, and then by pairs brought up by two Heralds, the two Earls reading the Oath unto them *alternis vicibus*, which done the Court and a Voidy or ſweet meats were brought into the Chapell to the Knights, who then retiring to their Bed-chamber, and Bathing-chamber, they deveſted themſelves of their Hermetical Weeds, put on white boots, a ſurcoat of Red Taffata, and a Robe of the ſame edged with white, and ſo ridd to the Court, firſt the Trumpets, then the Heralds, then the Knights between their Governors, with their Pages riding before them, carrying a ſword in a white ſcabbard with a Belt, with gilt hilts, and a pare of gilt ſpurrs hanging thereupon; being alighted at the Court gate, the Earl of *Oxford* preceded with his Page before him, between his two Governors, and the next followed according to their priority into the Hall, where being placed with their Governors in a ſemicircle forme, the King after came down, accompanied with the Nobility, (but no Biſhops) and at firſt the Earl of *Oxford* was preſented unto him ſitting under his State by the Governors,

the

the Page delivering the ſword to the Lord Chamberlaine, and he to the King, who girt it about the Earls Neck, and the Earl of *Northampton* put on his ſpurrs, and ſo the reſt were received accordingly: But, when at the beginning, ſome of the Nobility miſtook the left ſpurr for the right, the King, as though it were ominous, ſeemed offended, and thenceforth they put on only the right ſpurr, the King haſtning to the Sermon, and their Pages, when they came down, did put on the other. Then they returned to *Durham*-houſe in ſuch Order as they came, where they ſat down at Table, but in a modeſt temperance did eat nothing, but riſing from the Table, left the meat to their Governors and Eſquires. About ſix of the Clock in the afternoon, they rid to the Court orderly againe, and ſo proceeded to the Veſpers, in the End whereof before the *Creed*, they offered the ſwords into the Dean of the Chapells hands, redeeming the ſame with an Angell offered into a Baſon held by a Miniſter in a Cope thereby. The Dean uſed theſe Words at the re-delivery of their ſwords; *By the Oath, that you received this day, remember to uſe your ſword to the Glory of God, the Defence of his Word, of your Sovereign and Country, and to the maintenance of Juſtice*; and ſo returned by the upper end to their Stalls, where they ſatt, while the Verſicles and Collects were red, and the Anthem ſung, *&c.* And then deſcended from their Stalls, and ſo paſſed forth, the King's Maſter-Cook with his Chopping-knife admoniſhing them of their Oath, and taking their horſes, returned to *Durham*-houſe, where they parted every one to his own.

NUMB. LXXVI.

G. 2. penes me p. 335.

The manner of the Creation of the Knights of the Bath, *and the Ceremonies obſerved in ſolemnizing the ſame.*

According to the Order given from the Commiſſioners appointed for the overſight and directory of theſe Ceremonies, the Lords, and others that were to receive the honorable Order of the *Bath*, repaired on *Saterday* the ſecond of *June*, to *Durham*-houſe in the *Strand*, and there in the afternoon heard Evening prayer, obſerving no other Ceremony at that time, but only paſſing through the Hall, the Heralds going before them with their Coats upon their Arms unto the Chapell,

Chapell, from whence, after Service ended, they returned unto the Chamber, they were to ſupp in.

Their ſupper was prepared at one Table, and all ſat upon one ſide of the ſame, every man having an Eſcutcheon of his Arms placed over his head, and certain of the Kings Officers being appointed to attend them, in this manner having taken their Repaſt, the Table was removed, and ſeveral Bedds made ready for their lodging in the ſame place, after the ſame manner, all on one ſide, and each one, as afore, right under Eſcutcheon of his own Arms, their Beds were Palets with Canopies of red Say, but they uſed no Curtains; the Knights in the mean while were withdrawn into the Bathing-Chamber, which was the next Room to that they ſupped in, where for each of them was provided a ſeveral Bathing-Tub, which was lined both within and without with white Linnen, and covered with red Say, after the Bath they betook themſelves to Reſt. Early the next morning they were awakened with Muſick, and at their upriſing inveſted in their Hermits habits, which was a goune of gray Cloth girded cloſe, and Hood of the ſame, with a linnen Coyfe under it, and an handkerchief hanging at his Girdle, cloth ſtockings ſoaled with leather, but no Shoes; and thus apparalled, their Eſquires going with the Heralds wearing their Coats of Arms, and ſundry ſorts of Wind Inſtruments going before them, they proceeded from their lodging down through the Hall, the meaneſt in order formoſt, as the night before, till they came to the Chapell, where, after Service done, their Oath was miniſtred unto them by the Earl of *Worceſter*, and the Earl of *Suffolk*, in a ſolemn and ceremonious manner, all of them ſtanding forth before their Stalls, and at their coming out making low Reverence towards the Altar, by which the Commiſſioners ſate, then were they brought up by the Heralds by two at once, the chiefeſt firſt, and ſo the reſt, till all ſucceſſively had received their Oaths, which in Subſtance was, That above all things they ſhould honour God and maintain true Religion, love their Sovereign, ſerve their Country, help Maidens, Widows, and Orphans, and to the uttermoſt of their Power cauſe Equity and Juſtice to be obſerved; This done, whilſt they were yet in the Chapel, Wine and Sweet-meats were brought, then they departed to their Chamber to be diſ-

robed of their Hermits Weeds, and now reveſted again in Robes of Crimſon Taffata lined with white Sarcenet, having white Hats on their Heads with white Feathers, white Boots on their Leggs, and white Gloves tyed to the Strings of their Mantles, all which performed, they mounted on horſeback, their Saddles being of black Leather, and Bridles of the ſame, with white Croſſes upon their Breaſts, and Cruppers of their Horſes, each Knight between his two Eſquires, well apparelled, with Footmen attending, and his Page riding before him, carrying his Sword with the Hilt upward, and his Spurrs hanging thereon. In this Order they ranked every Man according to his Degree, the beſt or chiefeſt firſt, they rode fair and ſoftly toward the Court-Gate, they were conducted by the Heralds, and others appointed for that Purpoſe, into the Hall, where His Majeſty ſitting under his Cloth of Eſtate, gave them their Knighthood in this Manner. Firſt, the principal Lord, that is to receive the Order comes, led by his two Eſquires, and his Page before him bearing his Sword and Spurrs, and kneeled down before his Majeſty, the Lord Chamberlain takes the Sword of the Page, and delivered it to the King, who puts the Belt over the Neck of the Knight aſlope his Breaſt, placing the Sword under his left Arm, then two Noblemen of the Chief about the King put on his Spurrs, and ſo is the Ceremony performed in this Sort, the Earl of *Oxford*, which was the Principal of this Number, being firſt created, the reſt were all conſequently knighted alike; and when the Solemnity thereof was fully finiſhed, then all returned again in order as they came, ſaving ſome ſmall Difference, in that the youngeſt or meaneſt Knight went foremoſt, and their Pages behind them; Coming back to *Durham*-houſe, their Dinner was ready prepared in the ſame Room, and after the ſame Faſhion as their Supper was the Night before, that being ſat, they were not to taſte of any thing that ſtood before them, but with a modeſt Carriage and graceful Abſtinence to refrain, divers kinds of ſweet Muſick being play'd the while, and after convenient Time of ſitting, to ariſe and withdraw themſelves, leaving the Table furniſhed to their Eſquires and Pages: And about four of the Clock in the Afternoon they rode again to Court to their Service in the King's Chapel, keeping the ſame Order

they

they did at their return from thence in the Morning, every Knight riding between his Eſquires, and his Page following; At their Entrance into the Chapel, the Heralds conducting them, they make a ſolemn Reverence, the youngeſt Knight beginning, the reſt orderly inſuing, and ſo one after another take their Standing before their Stalls, where all being placed, the eldeſt Knight maketh a ſecond Reverence, which is followed to the youngeſt, and then all aſcend into their Stalls, and take their accuſtomed Places, Service then beginneth, and is very ſolemnly celebrated, with ſinging of divers Anthems, and playing on the Organs, and when the time of their Offertory is come, the youngeſt Knights are ſummoned forth of their Stalls by the Heralds, doing Reverence, firſt within the Stalls, and again after they are deſcended, which is likewiſe imitated by all the reſt; and being all thus come forth, and ſtanding before their Stalls, as at firſt, the two eldeſt Knights with their Swords in their Hands are brought up by the Heralds to the Altar, where they offer their Swords, and the Dean receives them, of whom they preſently redeem them with an Angel in Gold, and then come down to their former Places, whilſt two others are led up in like manner, ſo doing ſucceſſively, till the whole Ceremony be performed, which done, and Service ended, they depart in ſuch Order as they came, with accuſtomed Reverence. At the Chapel Door, as they came forth, they were encountred by the King's Majeſties Cook, who ſtood there with his white Apron and Sleeves, and a Chopping-Knife in his Hand, and challenged their Spurrs, which were likewiſe redeemed with a Noble in Money, threatning them nevertheleſs, that if they ſhould not be true and loyal to the King his Lord and Maſter, it muſt be his Office to hew them from their Heels. On *Monday* Morning, they all met together again at the Court, where in a private Room appointed for them, they were clothed in long Robes of Purple Satin, with Hoods of the ſame all lined, and edged about with white Taffata; and thus apparelled they gave their Attendance - - - - at a Side-Board, as is already declared.

NUMB. LXXVII.

C. 15. *p.* 19. *G.* 2. *p.* 394. in my Cuſtody.

At the Creation of the Prince of Wales. [3d *June*, 1610.]

The Lords and other Gentlemen appointed to receive the Order of the *Bath*, repaired to *Durham*-houſe, between two and three of the Clock in the Afternoon, to hear Evening-Prayer in the Chappel of the ſame Houſe, to ſup together, and after to prepare themſelves unto Bathing.

The Bath is performed in the Night, where every Knight is to have his particular Tubb, and Attendants, a Bed with a Covering Teſter, or Canopy of red Say, without Curtines, and a Scutcheon of his Arms over his Bed's head; after their Bath, they betake themſelves to reſt, and early in the Morning are awaked with Muſick, and being riſen, are inveſted by their Eſquires Governors in their Hermits Habit, and ſo preceded by their Eſquires, downe the Stairs round about the Hall, and ſo up again into the Chapel of the ſaid Houſe to hear Morning-Prayer, the Muſicians and Heralds going before them, the Eſquires and Muſicians ſtayed in the Fore-Chapel.

Service being ended, the Lords Commiſſioners appointed for that Purpoſe, did give them their Oaths, which done, and a Voydy prepared for them, they returned in the ſame manner as they came, to put off their Hermits Weeds, and were reveſted in Crimſon Robes, white Hats, white Feathers, and white Boots, and ſo rid to the Court at *Whiteball*, to receive their Knighthood, in Manner as followeth.

Firſt the Trumpets ſounding, then the Heralds, every Knight's Page riding before his Maſter, bearing his Sword, the Pomel upwards, the Spurrs tyed to the Hilts, and on each Hand of the Knight, rideth an Eſquire Governor well ſuited, and a Footman or two to attend their Horſe.

At the Court-Gate they alight from their Horſes, and are met with the Officers of Armes, and others appointed to conduct them to his Majeſties Preſence, to receive their Knighthood, as followeth;

The King's Majeſty being ſat in the Hall, accompanied with his greateſt Lords, the chiefeſt Lord, that is to receive the Order of Knighthood, is firſt preſented unto his Majeſty by the Lord Chamberlain, who taketh the Sword from the Page, and delivereth it to the King, who putteth it about

about the neck of the Knight, as he kneeleth, and two of the Lords putt on his Spurrs in the King's Preſence, and ſo are they knighted one after the other.

After which they returned, with the Trumpets, and Heralds before them to *Durrham-houſe* to dynner, every one having an Eſchocheon of his Armes placed over his head, as he ſitted, which is all on one ſide of the Table, but they mnſt not eat, nor drink of that which is provyded for them.

Which Abſtenance, or rather Pennance muſt be endured for *decorum* ſake, with a modeſt and ſeemly carriage, The Muſitians all the while playing before them. And after a convenyent tyme of ſitting, they ariſe, and goe into another Roome, leaving the Table furniſhed to the Eſquires and Pages.

About four of the Clock in the Afternoon, they rid in like manner with their Eſquires to Evening Prayer in the King's Chapell, their Pages following them. At the Court Gate, the Officers of Armes gave their attendance, as well to conduct, as to direct them in every thing, At entring into the Chapell the Heralds made their accuſtomed Reverence, the younger Knights following, doing the like, taking their Place before the lower Stalls, and ſo all the reſt, and when the eldeſt be placed, they do with like reverence aſcend to the upper Stalls in like manner, as at St. *George*'s Feaſt.

Being placed in their Stalls Evening Prayer begann, divers Anthems being ſung, and the tyme of offertory come, Mr. *Garter* ſomoned them out of their Stalls, the youngeſt firſt, doing reverence firſt within the Stall, and the like after they are deſcended.

The eldeſt Knights are firſt brought up by the Heralds, bearing their Swords in their hands, the pomell upwards, and offered them to the Dean of the Chapell, and redeemed them preſently again, with a piece of gonld of x *s.* and then depart as they came.

At the Chapell Door ſtandeth the Maſter Cook, with a chopping Knife, and a wooden block, challenging their Spurrs, which they redeem with a Noble in money, threatning them, that if they be not loyal Knights to the King his Maſter, that he muſt hew their Spurrs from their Heeles, and ſo they up on horſeback at the Court Gate to *Durrham-houſe* again.

The next day they were apparalled in Robes of Purple Satin with hoods, all lyned with white Taffata, to attend on

the.

the Prince at his Creation, which was in the Parlement-houſe, then kept in the Court of Requeſts. The King and the Prince came from *Whitehall* by water to the Parlament Stairs, But after the creation of the Prince, they returned all through *Weſtminſter-hall* to the Bridge, and ſo to *Whitehall* again, where they dined, the Prince, and Noblemen at a long table in the middeſt of the Hall, and the new Knights of the *Bath* at a long table on the *Weſt* ſide of the Hall, where they ſate all on one ſide.

NUMB. LXXVIII.

Stow's *Annals p.* 899.

Wedneſday the 30th of *May* 1610, the Prince rode to *Richmond*, and the next day by water to *Whitehall*—— and there he was received by the Officers of the King's Houſehold, in ſeveral places according to their Offices—— and the *Saturday* after [2 *June*] the Knights of the *Bath*, being in number 25, met at *Durrham-houſe* between four and five of the Clock in the Afternoone, and proceeded from the great Chamber round about the Hall, not in any robes or habits that night, but in their ordinary apparell, the Heraulds going before them with their Coats upon their Armes, and then entred the Chapell of the ſaid *Houſe*, and there every Knight took his Seat, the chiefeſt firſt, with ſolemn reverence placed, and then heard divine ſervice, which being ended, they returned directly forth of the Chappell to the chamber, where they ſupped, ſitting all on one ſide, and attended by Gentlemen-Uſhers, and the Kings Guard, every Knights Scutcheon being placed over his head, as he ſat that night at Supper, and after Supper they withdrew themſelves into the next room, where all their Bathes were prepared, every one having his ſeveral Tubb lined within and without, with white linnen cloth, and covered on the top with red Say, and a ticket of every mans name ſet upon his Tub very orderly, and when they were bathed, there were beds ſet up in the roome, where they had ſupped for every man, *viz.* a Pallet with a Canopy with an Eſcutcheon of his Armes, placed there as he ſat at ſupper, the next Morning being *Saterday*, about ſeven of the clocke, they were all ready in their Heremitical weeds, *viz.* each Knight in his Gray Gowne, girded unto him with a ruſſet ſilke girdle, and an handkerchief hanging thereat, and a linnen coyfe upon his head, and upon that, his hood of gray ſuitable to his gown, with

with a pair of Cloth Stockings, ſoaled with white leather, called Chaſhambles, and being thus apparelled they went forward, the younger Knights marching firſt, and went round about the Hall of the ſaid Houſe in like manner, as they had done the night before; The King's Muſitians, with their wind Inſtruments, and the Heralds inveſted in their Coats of Arms, going before them, and ſo came up again to the Chapell, and took their Seats, as they did the night before, with their accuſtomed Reverences, where divine Service being ended, they took their Oaths, the which was miniſtred unto them by the Lord *Chamberlain* and the Earl of *Worceſter*, the eldeſt Knights firſt, and ſo unto the laſt, the manner whereof was thus, Firſt the two oldeſt Knights made their reverence within their Stalls, and being come forth, made the like reverence again, and ſtood before their Stalls, one againſt another; and ſo two by two orderly, untill they were all come forth, and ſtood before their Stalls, then *Clarencieux* and *Norroy* went down, and made their reverence to the Altar, and brought up the two firſt Knights to the Altar, where the Commiſſioners aforeſaid ſate to give them their Oaths, which being done, they returned down as they came, and took their places before their Stalls, as they did before, then the two eldeſt Heralds conducted the two next Knights in like manner, and ſo by courſe and turns, untill they all received their Oaths, the forme of which Oath followeth,

Right dere Brother, great worſhip be this Order unto you, and the Almighty God give you the prayſing of all Knighthood. You ſhall honour God above all things, You ſhall be ſtedfaſt in the Faith of Chriſt, and the ſame maintain and defend to your power, You ſhall love your Soveraign above all earthly creatures, And for your Soveraign, and your Soveraigns Right and Dignity live and dy, You ſhall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you ſhall ſuffer no extortion as far forth as you may, nor ſit in any place, where any wrongfull Judgement ſhall be given to your knowledge, and as great honor be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any your Progenitors.

This Oath being given, and the Lords departed, the Knights ſtanding ſtill before their Stalls, were preſented with a banquet of wine, and divers delicate ſweet meats, and after the ſame, they reſorted to the Chamber, where they had been bathed

the

the Prince at his Creation, which was in the Parlement-houſe, then kept in the Court of Requeſts. The King and the Prince came from *Whitehall* by water to the Parlament Stairs, But after the creation of the Prince, they returned all through *Weſtminſter-hall* to the Bridge, and ſo to *Whitehall* again, where they dined, the Prince, and Noblemen at a long table in the middeſt of the Hall, and the new Knights of the *Bath* at a long table on the *Weſt* ſide of the Hall, where they ſate all on one ſide.

NUMB. LXXVIII.

Stow's *Annals p.* 899.

Wedneſday the 30th of *May* 1610, the Prince rode to *Richmond*, and the next day by water to *Whitehall*—— and there he was received by the Officers of the King's Houſehold, in ſeveral places according to their Offices—— and the *Saturday* after [2 *June*] the Knights of the *Bath*, being in number 25, met at *Durrham-houſe* between four and five of the Clock in the Afternoone, and proceeded from the great Chamber round about the Hall, not in any robes or habits that night, but in their ordinary apparell, the Heraulds going before them with their Coats upon their Armes, and then entred the Chapell of the ſaid *Houſe*, and there every Knight took his Seat, the chiefeſt firſt, with ſolemn reverence placed, and then heard divine ſervice, which being ended, they returned directly forth of the Chappell to the chamber, where they ſupped, ſitting all on one ſide, and attended by Gentlemen-Uſhers, and the Kings Guard, every Knights Scutcheon being placed over his head, as he ſat that night at Supper, and after Supper they withdrew themſelves into the next room, where all their Bathes were prepared, every one having his ſeveral Tubb lined within and without, with white linnen cloth, and covered on the top with red Say, and a ticket of every mans name ſet upon his Tub very orderly, and when they were bathed, there were beds ſet up in the roome, where they had ſupped for every man, *viz.* a Pallet with a Canopy with an Eſcutcheon of his Armes, placed there as he ſat at ſupper, the next Morning being *Saterday*, about ſeven of the clocke, they were all ready in their Heremitical weeds, *viz.* each Knight in his Gray Gowne, girded unto him with a ruſſet ſilke girdle, and an handkerchief hanging thereat, and a linnen coyfe upon his head, and upon that, his hood of gray ſuitable to his gown, with

with a pair of Cloth Stockings, ſoaled with white leather, called Chaſhambles, and being thus apparelled they went forward, the younger Knights marching firſt, and went round about the Hall of the ſaid Houſe in like manner, as they had done the night before; The King's Muſitians, with their wind Inſtruments, and the Heralds inveſted in their Coats of Arms, going before them, and ſo came up again to the Chapell, and took their Seats, as they did the night before, with their accuſtomed Reverences, where divine Service being ended, they took their Oaths, the which was miniſtred unto them by the Lord *Chamberlain* and the Earl of *Worceſter*, the eldeſt Knights firſt, and ſo unto the laſt, the manner whereof was thus, Firſt the two oldeſt Knights made their reverence within their Stalls, and being come forth, made the like reverence again, and ſtood before their Stalls, one againſt another; and ſo two by two orderly, untill they were all come forth, and ſtood before their Stalls, then *Clarencieux* and *Norroy* went down, and made their reverence to the Altar, and brought up the two firſt Knights to the Altar, where the Commiſſioners aforeſaid ſate to give them their Oaths, which being done, they returned down as they came, and took their places before their Stalls, as they did before, then the two eldeſt Heralds conducted the two next Knights in like manner, and ſo by courſe and turns, untill they all received their Oaths, the forme of which Oath followeth,

Right dere Brother, great worſhip be this Order unto you, and the Almighty God give you the prayſing of all Knighthood. You ſhall honour God above all things, You ſhall be ſtedfaſt in the Faith of Chriſt, and the ſame maintain and defend to your power, You ſhall love your Soveraign above all earthly creatures, And for your Soveraign, and your Soveraigns Right and Dignity live and dy, You ſhall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you ſhall ſuffer no extortion as far forth as you may, nor ſit in any place, where any wrongfull Judgement ſhall be given to your knowledge, and as great honor be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any your Progenitors.

This Oath being given, and the Lords departed, the Knights ſtanding ſtill before their Stalls, were preſented with a banquet of wine, and divers delicate ſweet meats, and after the ſame, they reſorted to the Chamber, where they had been bathed

the

the night before, and there putt off their Hermetical Habits, and inveſted themſelves in their Crimſon Taffata Robes, which was in this manner; firſt a Surcoat of Crimſon Taffata, lined with white Sarcenet girt unto them, and over that a long robe of like Crimſon Taffata edged with white, having Cardowes [Gordons] of white Silke, with Taſſells of the ſame, at which Cardowes were tyed a pair of white leather gloves, their hatts, boots, and feathers were white alſo, and ſo they took their horſes in *Durrham-houſe* Yard about tenn of the clock, being furniſhed with black leather Saddles, garniſhed with white croſſes over their horſes foreheads and peurells [Pectorals] and ſo rode unto the Court, every one betwixt his two Eſquires, and his Page before him bearing his ſword, the hilt upwards, with his guilt ſpurrs hanging thereon, the Heralds riding before them, and the Trumpeters ſounding all the way to the Court Gate, where they all alighted, and went on foot in ſuch ſort as they came on horſeback, *viz.* the chiefeſt Knights firſt, where they attending the Kings coming. And his Majeſty being come and placed under the cloth of Eſtate, he knighted them according to their Degrees, as followeth; the eldeſt Knight being led up by his two Eſquires, and his Page before him, bearing his ſword and ſpurrs, delivered them to the Lord *Chamberlain*, and the Lord *Chamberlain* preſented them to the King, who put the belt about their necks, and the ſword hanging bendwiſe, in which manner they were all one after another knighted, and one of their ſpurrs was put on their right heel by a great Lord, and the other Spurr by their Page, which being ended, they rode back again to *Durrham-houſe* in the ſame order as they came, but that the youngeſt Knight rode foremoſt, and their Pages came behind them.

The Dinner was prepared in the roome, where they ſupped the night before, with every Knights Arms over his head as aforeſaid, ſitting all upon one ſide of the Table, yet did they neither eat nor drink of that which was there prepared for them, but having ſate a convenient time in this gentle abſtinence, they all aroſe, and withdrew themſelves into another Roome, leaving their well furniſhed Table to the Pleaſure of their Eſquires and Pages, And after dinner, about four of the clock they rode again to the Court in like manner as they returned home in the morning, *viz.* the youngeſt Knights firſt,

and

and his Page behind him, and ſo came to the Chapell, where with accuſtomed Reverences to God, and the King they entred, and aſcended their Stalls, as they had formerly done in the morning at *Durrham-houſe*, and preſently after the ſecond leſſon, the Muſick of the Offertory being begun, the Knights with their uſual Reverences came forth, and ſtood before their Stalls, where the Earl of *Oxford (Garter* going before him) firſt offered his ſword at the Altar, the pommel upwards, and redeemed again for an Angel of Gold, and receiving a ſhort Exhortation of the Dean, he returned before his Stall again, and then two other of the eldeſt Knights were brought up by two of the Kings of Arms, who in like manner offered their ſwords, and redeemed them, and returned, and ſo the reſt, one after another, offered their ſword, untill the youngeſt. The Words of the Deans Exhortations were theſe,

By the Oath, that you have taken this day, you ſhall uſe theſe ſwords to the Honour of God, and his Word, to the Defence of your King, and Country, and to the maintenance of Juſtice and Equity.

Evening Prayer being ended, there ſtood at the Chapell Door the King's Maſter Cook with his white Apron, and Sleeves, and Chopping-knife in his hand gilded about the Edge, and challenged their ſpurrs, which they redeemed with a Noble a peice; and he ſaid to every Knight, as they paſſed by him,

Sir Knight, look, that you be true and loyal to the King my Maſter, or elſe I muſt hew theſe ſpurrs from your Heels.

And ſo they marched through the Hall into the Court Yard, and at the Gate took their Horſes, and returned to *Durrham-houſe* in the ſame Order as they came, the Trumpets ſounding, the Heralds ſtill attending them, till they came there; and then every Knight alighted, and put of his Robes, and then every one went prively to his own lodging; for that night they had no Supper there provided.

The next morning, about eight of the Clock, they mett all in the Queens Cloſet, where they put on long purple ſatin robes lined with white Taffata without any Cardowes, and about their Necks, a hood like a Batchelor of Law, edged about with Taffata, being then ready to attend the Prince unto his Creation, but for want of good and true Direction, the Prince (who ſhould have gone in a Barge by himſelf, and theſe Knights in another before him) went with the King in

his Barge, And the Knights of the *Bath* ſtaid behind, untill they were ſent for, and being landed at *Weſtminſter Palace-Bridge*, they were met at the Hall-Gate by the Heralds only, and ſo conducted up to the Door of the Court of Wards, where the Prince was to proceed to his Creation, and they went in next before the Lords, that were employed in ſeveral ſervices at the ſaid Creation, and the Heralds before them, and proceeded into the Parliament-Chamber, where he was created in this manner following, the Lords performing their ſeveral Offices here underwritten. Maſter *Garter* bearing the Letters Patents &c. Then follows the Ceremony of Creation.

All which being ended, they returned down through *Weſtminſter-hall*, to the *Palace-bridge* in this manner, firſt the Maſters of the Chancery, and other Miniſters of the Law *viz.* the King's Councill, and others, then the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the *Bath*, next after them the Judges, and after them the whole Parliament-houſe in order as the common proceeding is, the Barons, Vicounts, Earls, and Marquiſes having Coronets on their heads, Maſter *Norroy* and Maſter *Clarenceux* going next before the Lord Treaſurer and the Lord Chancellor, and Maſter *Garter* next before the Sword, and ſo procoeded to the Stairs, where all took water, in ſeveral Barges, the Heralds and the Trumpets going in the Row-barge next before the Knights, and ſo landed at *Whitehall* Bridge, where the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the *Bath*, and Lords being firſt landed attended the King, And when the King and Prince were landed, they went all before him into the Hall, and ſo up into the great Chamber, from whence the Prince came down to Dinner into the Hall, where were two Tables ſet longways down the Hall, one of them ſtoode in the middle, where the Prince himſelf ſate at the upper end, accompanied with the Lords, that attended him in his Creation, and at the other Table on the left hand of the Prince, ſate all the Knights of the *Bath* in their purple Robes all upon one ſide, where they were all royally feaſted and attended by the Kings Servants.

NUMB. LXXIX.

Knights of the Bath, *made at the Coronation of* Charles *Prince of* Wales, *at* Whitehall 3 Nov. 1616.

James, Lord *Matravers*, eldeſt ſonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Arundell.*

Algernon

Algernon Lord *Percy*, eldeſt ſonne to the Earl of *Northumberland.*

James Lord *Wriotheſley*, eldeſt ſonne to *Henry* the Earl of *Southampton.*

Theophilus Lord *Clinton*, after Earl of *Lincolne*, eldeſt ſonne of *Thomas* Earl of *Lincolne.* [*Stow* calls him *Edward*]

Edward Seymor, Lord *Beauchampe*, Grandchild to *Edward* Earl of *Hertford.*

George Lord *Barkeley.*

Henry Lord *Mordant*, after Earl of *Peterborough.*

[The Maſter of *Fenton*] The Earl of *Marre* his eldeſt ſonne, *Erskin* after Lord *Fenton.* [In G. 2. p. 381, Sir *Alexander Fenton* ſon and heir of the Earl of *Kelley*] Viſcount *Fenton's* ſon, and ſo they uſe to ranke the eldeſt ſonne in *Scotland.* Ibid. *p.* 389.

Sir *Henry Howard* ſecond ſon to the Earl of *Arundel*, after Lord *Matravers.*

Sir *Robert Howard* fifth [third] ſonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk.*

Sir *Edward Sackvill*, after Earl of *Dorſet.*

Sir *William Howard* ſixth [fourth] ſonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk.*

Sir *Edward Howard* ſeventh [fifth] ſonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk*, after Lord *Howard* of *Eſcricke* in *Torkſhire.*

Sir *William Seymor* ſecond ſonne to the Lord *Beauchampe*, after Earl of *Hartford.*

Sir *Mountague Bartie* ſonne and heire to *Robert* [Lord *Willoughby*] Earl of *Lindſey*, after Lord *Willoughby.*

Sir *William Stourton* ſonne [and heir] to the Lord *Stourton.*

Sir *William Parker* [ſon and heir of Lord *Montegle*] after Lord *Morley* and *Monteagle.* [*Stow* calls him *Henry.*]

Sir *Dudley North* [ſon and heir of the Lord *North*] after Lord *North.*

Sir *William Spencer* [ſon and heir of the Lord *Spencer*] after Lord *Spencer.*

Sir *Spencer Compton* [ſon and heir of the Lord *Compton*] after Earl of *Northampton.*

Sir *Rowland St. John*, Brother to *Oliver* Earl of *Bullinbrook.*

Sir *John Cavendiſh* ſecond ſonne to *William* Earl of *Devonſhire.*

Sir *Thomas Nevil* ſonne to *Henry* Lord *Abergavenny.*

Sir *John Roper* [ſon and heir of the Lord *Tenham*] after Lord *Tenham*.

Sir *John North* Brother to *Dudley* Lord *North*.

Sir *Henry Carey*, after Viſcount *Faulkland*.

Number 25. See *Stow*'s Ann. p. 1026.

G. 2. *penes me p.* 400 *b.*

Saterday the 2 *November* they went to Evening Prayer, from the Parliament-houſe to the Chapell of King *Henry* 7, and after returned to the ſaid Parliament-houſe, where they kept their Bath. *Sunday* the 3d of *November*, they were awaked with Muſick, and went in their Hermits weeds to the Chapell aforeſaid, where, after that Morning Prayer was ended, they had their Oaths given them in the Chapell, by the Earl of *Arundell* then for that time Earl Marſhal, and the Earle of *Pembroke* Lord Chamberlain, and then returned with their Muſick, and Heralds to the Parliament-houſe again, where they put off their Hermits weeds, and were reveſted in Robes of Crimſon Taffeta, white Hatts, Feathers, and Boots. In the Afternoon they ridd with their Eſquires and the Heralds to *Whitehall*, to receive the Knighthood, and then returned, riding to the Parliament-houſe again, and preſently to *Whitehall* again to Evening Prayer, they offered up their Swords, and ſo returned. *Munday* 4 *Nov.* they were in Robes of Purple Satin to attend on the Prince, who was created at *Whitehall* in the Great-Hall.

Numb. LXXX.

Knights of the Bath, *made at the Coronation of King* Charles 1, February 1625.

George Fielding, Viſcount *Callon*, ſecond ſonne to *William* Earle of *Denbigh*, after Earle of *Deſmond*.

James Stanlye, Lord *Strange*, eldeſt ſonne to *William* Earle of *Derby*.

Charles Cecill, Lord *Cranborn*, eldeſt ſonne to *William* Earle of *Salisbury*.

Charles Herbert, Lord *Herbert* of *Shurland*, eldeſt ſon to *Philip* Earle of *Montgomery*.

Robert Rich, Lord *Rich*, eldeſt ſon to *Robert* Earle of *Warwicke*.

James Hay, Lord *Hay*, eldeſt ſon to *James* Earle of *Carlile*.

Bazell

Bazell Fielding, eldeſt ſon to *William* Earle of *Denbigh*.

Oliver St. John, Lord *St. John*, eldeſt ſon to *Oliver* Earle of *Bullingbrooke*.

Mildmay Fane, Lord *Burgherſt*, eldeſt ſon of the Earle of *Weſtmerland*.

Lord *Henry Pawlet*, younger ſon to *William* Marqueſs of *Winchester*.

Sir *Edward Montagu*, eldeſt ſon to *Henry* Viſcount *Mandevill*, after Earle of *Manchester*.

Sir *John Cary*, eldeſt ſon to *Henry* Viſcount *Rochford*, after Earle of *Dover*.

Sir *Charles Howard*, eldeſt ſon to *Thomas* Viſcount *Andover*, after Earle of *Barkſhire*.

Sir *William Howard*, ſecond ſon to *Thomas* Earle of *Arundell*.

Sir *Robert Stanley*, ſecond ſon to *William* Earl of *Derby*.

Sir *Pawlet St. John*, ſecond ſon to *Oliver* Earle of *Bullingbrooke*.

Sir *Francis Fane*, ſecond ſon to *Francis* Earle of *Weſtmerland*.

Sir *James Howard*, eldeſt ſon to *Theophilus* Lord *Walden*, after Earle of *Suffolk*.

Sir *William Cavendiſh*, eldeſt ſon to *William* Lord *Cavendiſh*, Earle of *Devonſhire*.

Sir *Thomas Wentworth*, eldeſt ſon to *Thomas* Lord *Wentworth*, after Earle of *Cleveland*.

Sir *William Paget*, ſon to *William* Lord *Paget*, of *Bewdeſert*, after Lord *Paget*.

Sir *William Ruſſell*, eldeſt ſon to *Francis* Lord *Ruſſell*, after Earle of *Bedford*.

Sir *Henry Stanhope*, eldeſt ſon to *Philip* Lord *Stanhope* of *Shelford*, after Earle of *Cheſterfield*.

Sir *Richard Vaughan*, eldeſt ſon to *John* Lord *Vaughan* of *Molengar* in *Ireland*.

Sir *Chriſtopher Nevill*, ſecond ſon to *Edward* Lord *Abergavenny*.

Sir *Roger Bartie*, ſecond ſon to *Robert* Lord *Willoughby*, after Earle of *Lynſey*.

Sir *Thomas Wharton*, ſecond ſon to *Thomas* Lord *Wharton*.

Sir *Saint John Blunt*, brother to *Mountjoy Blunt*, Lord *Mountjoy*, after Earl of *Newport*.

[All theſe ſat at one Table on the one ſide.]

Sir

These are the King's Servants of the Privy-Chamber.

Sir *Ralph Clare* of *Worceſterſhire.*
Sir *John Maynard* of *Eſſex*, ſecond brother to the Lord *Maynard.*
Sir *Francis Carew* of *Devonſhire.* qu. if not *Cary.*
Sir *John Byron* of *Nottinghamſhire.*
Sir *Roger Palmer* of *Suſſex*, Maſter of the King's Houſehold.

Sir *Henry Edmonds*, ſon to Sir *Thomas Edmonds*, Treaſurer of the Houſehold.
Sir *Ralphe Hopton* of *Somerſetſhire.*
Sir *William Brooke* of *Kent.*
Sir *Alexander Ratcliffe* of *Lancaſhire.*
Sir *Edward Scot* of *Kent.*
Sir *Chriſtopher Hatton* of *Northamptonſhire.*
Sir *Thomas Sackvill* of *Suſſex.*
Sir *John Munſon* of *Lincolneſhire*, ſon to Sir *Thomas Munſon.*
Sir *Peter Wentworth* of *Oxfordſhire.*
Sir *John Buttler* of *Hartfordſhire.*
Sir *Edward Hungerford* of *Wiltſhire.*
Sir *Richard Lewſon* of *Kent.*
Sir *Nathaniel Bacon* of *Calford* in *Suffolke.*
Sir *Robert Poyntz* of *Glouceſterſhire.*
Sir *Robert Bevill* of *Huntingtonſhire.*
Sir *George Sands* of *Kent.*
Sir *Thomas Smith* of *Weſton-Hanger* in *Kent.*
Sir *Thomas Fanſhaw* of *Warparke* in *Hartfordſhire.*
Sir *Miles Hobard* of *Plomſted* in *Norfolke.*
Sir *Henry Hart* of *Kent*, ſon to Sir *Percivall Hart.*
Sir *Francis Carew*, alias *Throgmorton*, of *Bedington* in *Surrey.*
Sir *John Backhouſe* [*Baccus*] of *Berkſhire.*
Sir *Matthew Monins* of *Kent.*
Sir *John Stowell* of *Somerſetſhire.*
Sir *John Jennings* of *Hartfordſhire.*
Sir *Stepen Harvey* of *Northamptonſhire*, ſon to Judge *Harvey.*

Pat. 1 Car. *p.* 5. *n.* 6. King *Charles*, on 30th *January*, Commiſſions the Earls of *Arundell* and *Pembroke* to exerciſe every thing for the full making of Knights of the *Bath.*

Numb. LXXXI.

His Majeſty hath commanded me to let his Will and Pleaſure be knowne, that all the Knights of the *Bath*, aſwell thoſe made by the Kinge his Father of glorious memory in any time of his reigne, as thoſe by himſelf at his Royal Coronation, ſhall contynually weare the Enſigne of that Order about their necks, as a marke of Honour. And that they may not want any due unto them, I am to publiſh that Knights of the *Bath* and their Wyves are of right (without queſtion) to have precedency before all Knight *Batchelors*, and their Wives.

T. Arundell & Surrey.
Whiteball, 4 *Febr.* 1625. Earle Marſhal of *England.*

Numb. LXXXII.

G. 2. *penes me*, *p.* 383.

Tueſday 13 February, 1637.

The time his Majeſty hath appointed for the Prince his Son to receive the Orders of the Bath, *and of the* Garter, *with his Inſtallation at* Windſor.

On *Monday* the next day after *Trinity-Sonday*, being the 21 of *May* next, the Prince his Highnes, with other Knights of the *Bath*, that ſhall be appointed to attend him, are to beginne in the Evening the Ceremonyes belonging to the Knights of the *Bath*, at the King's ould Palace at *Weſtminſter*, His Highneſſe with them reſting that Night in the Parliament Rooms, and other Rooms adjoining, which are to be prepared accordingly.

The next Morning, being *Tueſday*, his Highneſſe, with the reſt, having heard *Mattins*, and received their Oaths in the King's Chappell Royall of *Hen.* VII. at *Weſtminſter*, after changing his Roabs with the reſt of the Knights, is to come on horſebacke to *Whiteball*, and there that Morning receive Knighthood, and immediately after to offer in the Chapell there, at which time His Majeſty (it being Sermon Day) may ſee the Ceremony, and then to returne on horſebacke to dinner, and ſo diſperſe there at *Weſtminſter*.

On *Wedneſday*, being the day, to which his Majeſtie for this Yeare is pleaſed to adjourne the day of St. *George's* Feaſt, all the Knights of the *Bath* early in the Morning are to come on horſebacke in their Purple Robes together, from

ſome

ſome Place which ſhall be appointed, to attend his Highneſs all that day, who will be there in his purple Robes to honour the King his Father's Feaſt, at the Evening of which day, the Scrutiny for Election is to paſſe according to Cuſtom.

On *Thurſday* Morning his Majeſty will inveſt the Prince with the Enſigns of the Order, at which tyme the Knights of the *Bath* are to attend his Highneſſe to Chapell, where ſome Proviſion to be made for their conveniency toward the Altar.

On *Friday* Morning his Highnes is to goe towards *Windſore*, beginning his Journey from *Somerſet*-Houſe, and to be accompanied with all the Knights of the Order of the *Garter*, and all their ſeveral Retinues (of which all the Knights of the Order are to take moſt particular Notice) as alſo with all the Knights of the *Bath* attending with their Robes in the Proceedings; and ſo at *Windſor*, where their Majeſties are pleaſed to declare, themſelves will be preſent to honour the Feaſt of his Highneſs's Inſtallation on *Saturday* the next day following.

Arundell and *Surrey*.

NUMB. LXXXIII.

Regiſtrum Nobiliſſimi Ordinis a Garterio Denominati.

Anno Dom. 1638. Caroli *anno* xiiii.

Maij xxi°—— Juventutis Principem *Carolum* jam octennem, ſed virtutibus longius multo quam ætate provectum, Supremus in auguſtum ordinem cooptat, electoq; id (reſcripto ſuo ad Regem Armorum dato) nunciari juſſit. Præſtolantem vero beneplacitum Supremi, ex aula Sangeorgiana bini Primores Ordines, Comes ſcilicet *Pembrochiæ* & *Montgomeriæ*, Comeſq; *Arundeliæ* & *Surriæ*, medium deducunt, antecedente nigræ-virgæ-gerulo. Accedentem (non ſine debita veneratione ad thronum Supremi) exultans plenis affectibus excipit auguſtus Pater, ſtatimq; Periſcelide—— lævam cingit Tibiam, repetente Cancellario priſcam formulam—— Principi ad hunc modum recepto, gratulabantur ſigillatim omnes Commilitones; moxq; ad Cameram Præſentiæ regreſſi, dictos binos Primores rogant, ut Principem reliquorum nomine Supremo præſentarent, Equitis Baccalaurei titulo, & ritibus (ut leges jubent) primo initiandum; Primus enim ille apud *Britannos* dignitatis omnis militaris gradus eſt, Honorum omnium in Republicâ baſis; adeo

adeo ut nulli ex gente *Britannica* (quantàcunq; alias polleat ſanguinis aut virtutum præcellentiâ) fas ſit in honoratiſſimam ſocietatem cooptari, niſi quem prius iſte militaris honoris gradus habilem reddiderit & capacem. Primum itaq; ſolenni more Princeps genibus innixus a Supremo creatur Eques Auratus, & in augmentum Honoris ex nobilibus evocati quatuor, quos ſimilibus auſpiciis Supremus in ſpem majoris gratiæ ſublevavit. Horum primus Comes *Eſſexiæ*, dominis *Frederico Hamilton* & *Roberto Honnywoode* militibus ſtipatus ad ſolium Supremi procumbit creandus; Hunc ſequutus eſt Comes Sti. *Albani*, quem dexterâ Dom. *Rogerus Palmer* Eques Balneatus Regi ab arculis, ſiniſtrâ dominus *Henricus Mildmay* gemmarij regij Cuſtos comitabantur; Dein Comiti de *Elgin* paraſtatæ erant dom. *Joannes Meldrum* & dom. *Joannes Witherington*. Quarto loco Dominus Vicecomes *Grandiſon* medius iit inter Dom. *Joannem Harper*, & Dom. *Joannem Lucas*.

Numb. LXXXIV.

The Narrative of the Coronation of King Charles II. *by Sir* Edward Walker, Garter. MS. in Off. Arm.

To this great and ſplendid Solemnity, ſucceeded that of making Knights of the *Bath*, an Order, wherewith the Kings of *England* uſually ſome Days before their Coronations dignifyed the Sonnes of their Nobility, and other eminent Gentry of this Kingdom; To which end, by his Majeſties Command, the Lord Chamberlain of his Majeſties Houſhold (in the Vacancy of an Earle Marſhal) wrot Letters unto every one of them deſigned for that Dignity, requiring their Attendance upon *Thurſday* the 18th of *April*, in the Palace at *Weſtminſter*, there to be called, and begin that Ceremony; the Copy of which Letter is as followeth,

After my hearty commendations to your Lordſhip; whereas his Majeſtye hath appointed the 23d day of Aprill *next for his ſolemne coronation at* Weſtminſter, *and the day before to proceed publiquely through the City of* London *to his Palace at* Whitehall: *And according to the antient cuſtome uſed by his royall Predeceſſours, his Majeſty is graciouſly pleaſed to advance certain of his nobility, and principal gentry into the honourable Order of the* Bath, *to attend him in thoſe great ſolemnityes, and (amongſt others) hath vouchſafed to nominate*

you to be one of that number. Theſe are therefore to will and require you, in his Majeſtyes name, to make your appearance at his Majeſty's Palace at Weſtminſter *upon* thurſday *in the afternoon, being the* 18*th of* Aprill *next, furniſhed, and appointed, as in ſuch caſes appertaineth, there to begin the uſuall ceremony, and the next day to receive the ſaid Order of Knighthood of the* Bath *from his Majeſty's hands, hereof you are not to fail; and ſo I bid your Lordſhip heartily farewell.*

Your Lordſhip's very affectionate friend.

Hereupon ſixty eight (whereof ſome were ſons of the nobility) with Baronetts and Eſquires, appeared in the Court of Requeſts, and being called by an Herauld, anſwered to their names, as they were all Ranked that morning by the Duke of *Ormond*, then Lord Steward, (and after Lord High Steward of *England* for the Coronation) the Earle of *Lindſey* Lord Greate Chamberlaine of *England*, the Earle of *Northumberland* Lord High Conſtable, and the Earle of *Suffolk* Earle Marſhall (who that morning received their commiſſions and ſtaves of office from his Majeſtye) their authority being thereby to continue unto the night after the Coronation) and by the Earle of *Manchester* Lord Chamberlaine of his Majeſtyes Houſehold whoſe names are as followeth, *viz.*

Edward Lord *Clinton*, Grandchild to the Earle of *Lincolne.*
John Lord *Brackley*, eldeſt ſon to the Earle of *Bridgewater.*
Philip Herbert, ſecond ſon to the Earle of *Pembrooke.*
William Egerton, ſecond ſon to the Earle of *Bridgewater.*
Vere Vane, ſecond ſon to the Earle of *Weſtmerland.*
Charles Berkeley, eldeſt ſon to the Lord *Barkeley.*
Henry Bellaſſis, eldeſt ſon to the Lord *Bellaſſis.*
Henry Hyde, eldeſt ſon to the Lord *Hyde*, Lord Chancellour.
Roland Bellaſſis, Brother to Viſcount *Fauconbridge.*
Henry Capell, ſon to the late Lord *Capell.*
John Vaughan, ſecond ſon to the Lord *Vaughan*, Earle of *Carbery.*
Charles Stanlye, Grandchild to the Earle of *Darby.*
Francis Fane, *Henry Fane*, } Grandchildren to the late Earle of *Weſtmerland.*
Sir *William Portman*, Baronett.
Sir *Richard Temple*, Bart.

Sir

Sir *William Ducy*, Bart.
Sir *Thomas Trevor*, Bart.
Sir *John Scudamore*, Bart.
Sir *William Gardiner*, Bart.
Charles Cornwallis, ſon to Sir *Frederick Cornwallis*.
John Nicholas, ſon to Sir *Edward Nicholas* Principal Secretary of State.

John Monſon.
Bourchier Wray.
John Coventry.
Edward Hungerford.
John Knevet.
Philip Butler.
Adrian Scrope.
Richard Knightley.
Henry Heron.
John Lewkenor.
George Browne.
William Terringham.
Francis Godolphin.
Edward Baynton.
Grevill Verney.
Edward Harley.
Edward Walpole.
Francis Popham.
Edward Wiſe.
Chriſtopher Calthrop.
Richard Edgcome.
William Bromley.
Thomas Bridges.
Thomas Fanſhaw.
John Denham.
Nicholas Bacon.
James Altham.
Thomas Wendy.
John Brampſton.
George Freeman.
Nicholas Slaning.
Richard Ingoldsby.
John Rolles.
Edward Heath.
William Morley.
John Bennet.
Hugh Smith.
Simon Leech.
Henry Cheſter.
Robert Atkins.
Robert Gayre.
Richard Powle.
Hugh Ducy.
Stephen Hales.
Ralph Baſh.
Thomas Whitmore.

Whence being called in order by the Officers of Arms, (with their coats upon their arms) between their two Eſquires, and Pages behind them, they proceed in their ordinary Habits to King *Henry* the 7th's Chapell, where they heard Evening-ſong; at their return they repoſed themſelves in the *Painted Chamber*, and *Lords Houſe of Parliament*, *Prince's Lodging*, and *Lobby*; where their lodgings were prepared, and Supper being made ready for them in the *Court of Requeſts*, they were ſet at convenient diſtance each from other, under the ſeveral Eſcutcheons of their Arms, their Eſquires

and Pages ſtanding on the other ſide of the Table to attend them; after Supper the Treaſurer, and Comptroller of his Majeſtyes Houſehold (the ſupper, and next day dinner being provided at his Majeſtyes Charge) at the upper end of the roome wellcomed them from the King, and conducted them to their Lodgins, where they were lodged in Palletts covered with red ſay, each having a demiteſter without courtins of the ſame ſtuffe, and an Eſcocheon of arms on every teſter; at the foot of every pallit (which were ſet at equal diſtance from each other, both in the *Painted Chamber*, and the *Lords houſe*) was a Bathing-Tubb covered without with twenty or four and twenty Ells of fine Linnen, with a croſſe hoope over it, covered with red Say, and a carpett at the ſide of it. The Rooms being voyded, each Bathed himſelf more or leſs, as he thought fitt, and ſo went to reſt.

Early the next morning all ſorts of muſick with drums and trumpetts bid them good morrow, being riſen, they apparelled themſelves in Cordeliers, or Hermitts habits, and ſo between their two Eſquires, and their Pages after them, and the Officers of Arms in their coats before them, they proceeded to *Henry* the 7th's Chappell, where being diſpoſed in order (the ſeats being not ſufficient to hold them) they ſtood before the Stalls againſt their Arms placed therein: Then the Duke of *Ormond* Lord Steward, the Earl of *Lindſey* Lord Great Chamberlain, the Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord High Conſtable, the Earle of *Suffolke* Earle Marſhall, and the Earle of *Manchester* Lord Chamberlaine, by virtue of his Majeſtyes commiſſion, the copy whereof is as followeth, (*Garter* principall king of Arms in his coat of arms preceeding them) came into the Quier, and ſat down on five chairs before the Altar.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, *&c.* To all, to whom theſe Preſents ſhall come greeting: Whereas we minding, and intending very ſhortly by the Grace of God to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation, in ſuch ſort, and manner, as in the Coronation of our Progenitors, and Predeceſſors hath been accuſtomed, and as to our State and Dignity Royal apperteineth, have, for the more Adornment of the ſaid Solemnity, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service, and

and other good Qualityes of many of our Servants, and other good Subjects, reſolved to call certain of them to the Order, and Dignity of Knights of the *Bath*; Know yee therefore, that we, for the eſpetiall Truſt and Confidence, which we have repoſed in our Right Truſty, and right wellbeloved Couſins, and Counſellors *James* Duke of *Ormond* Lord Steward, *Montagu* Earle of *Lindſey*, Lord great Chamberlaine of *England*, *Algernon* Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord high Conſtable, *James* Earle of *Suffolk*, Earle Marſhall, and *Edward* Earle of *Manchester*, Lord Chamberlaine of our houſehold, have aſſigned, nominated and appointed, and by theſe preſents doe aſſign, nominate, appoint, and authoriſe the ſaid *James* Duke of *Ormond*, *Montague* Earle of *Lindſey*, *Algernon* Earle of *Northumberland*, *James* Earle of *Suffolk*, and *Edward* Earle of *Manchester*, for us, and in our name, and by our authority, to doe, and exerciſe every thing, and things on our behalf, to be done and exerciſed for the full making of the Knights of the *Bath*, whom we intend ſpecially to call for that Purpoſe, and ſhall particularly nominate under our royall hand, and ſignature: And our further pleaſure is, that every perſon ſo to be advanced and made Knight of the *Bath*, and eſtabliſhed by the Rights and Ceremonyes thereof, performed by our ſaid commiſſioners, ſhall have, hold, and enjoy the ſaid order of Knighthood of the *Bath*, with the name, title, and dignity, and all prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight or Knights of like degree, made in the time of any of our Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have and enjoyed. In witneſs, *&c.* Teſte *&c.* 17 *Aprilis* 13 R. *Caroli* ſecundi.

Then the Officers of arms brought them up, ſix at a time, the ſeniors firſt, and having made three Reverences, *Garter* read the enſueing Oath, or admonition, and *Norroy* held the book, and gave it them to kiſs.

Right dear Brethren, Great worſhip be this noble Order unto every of you. You ſhall love and dread God above all things, You ſhall be ſtedfaſt in the Faith of Chriſt, You ſhall love the King your Soveraign Lord, and him, and his right defend to your power, You ſhall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you ſhall ſuffer no extortion,

as

as far as you may, nor ſit in a place, where any wrongfull Judgement ſhall be given to your knowledge, and of as great honor be this Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your kinne, progenitors, or others.

All which done the Lords Commiſſioners retired, *Garter* attending them, and ſervice being ended, the deſigned Knights returned whence they came, and there deveſted themſelves of their Hermits habits, and being apparelled in white Sattin ſuits, they put on their ſurcoats of Crimoſin Taffata lined with white, and their Mantles of the ſame, haveing Cordons of white ſilk and knopps of red ſilk and Gold, whereunto white gloves were tyed, as alſo white Boots, and white hatts and feathers, in this habitt they dined; after dinner they took horſe, and with drumms, trumpetts, and heraulds before them, each in his ſeniority between his two Eſquires, and his page well mounted before him, carrying his ſword and belt, the pommell upwards, with his ſpurrs hanging on the hilt, they proceeded into the new Palace-yard, and having ridden round about it, and through *King-ſtreet*, they paſſed by *Whitehall* ſurrounding the place, where *Charing-croſs* lately ſtood; then they returned, and alighted at *Whitehall* Gate, where they ought to have been received by the Treaſurer, and Comptroller of the houſe, and were by *Garter*, and the two provinciall Kings of Arms, thence making a tour about the court, they paſſed up the ſtaires to the Banquetting-houſe, where his Majeſty ſat under the Cloth of Eſtate.

In coming up, they made three obeyſances, and ſix of them being brought up together, neare the State (to ſhorten the time) the page of the eldeſt Knight upon his Knee delivered the Sword, Belt, and the Spurrs to the Lord *Chamberlaine*, and he to the King, then the Knight kneeling between his two Eſquires, was knighted with the Sword of State; then the King hung the Knights own Sword about his neck, and after that, the Riband with the order; then the Knight aroſe, and put his right foot upon the degrees of the State, and the Earle of *Lincoln* (by his Majeſty's appointment) touched the heele of the Knight, with a Spurr; for had every Knights Spurrs been putt on, it would have taken up many hours time, this done, the Knight withdrew, and the ſecond perſon was called by *Garter* according to the liſt, and knighted as the former,

former, and ſo the firſt ſix, then the two officers of Arms conducted ſix more, who in the like manner were knighted, and ſo all the reſt.

Which done, the Knights being put in order, the youngeſt formoſt, between his Eſquires, and his page behind him, they proceeded to the Chappell, and there entered two and two making reverences, but becauſe the Chappell was not capacious enough, they all ſtood before the Stalls, and after ſolemne ſervice, and anthems, the ſix eldeſt were brought up by the Heraulds, and offered their Swords, the Biſhop of *London* Dean of the Chappell receiving them, and laying them on the altar, and then gave them this admonition.

By the Oath, which you have taken this day, I exhort and admoniſh you to uſe theſe Swords to the Glory of God, and defence of the Goſpell, to the maintainance of your Sovereigns right, and honour, and to the upholding of Juſtice, and equity to your power, ſo help you God.

Which done, they redeemed their Swords with an Angell in gold, and returned before their Stalles, and ſtayed untill all of them had done the ſame; at the chappell dore the Kings Maſter Cooke with a white apron, and Chopping-knife in his hand, having a little table before him covered with a linnen Cloath, as they paſſed by, ſaid thus unto them.

Gentlemen, you know, what a great Oath you have taken, which is to defend the Goſpell, ſuccor the widows, and fatherleſs, right the wronged *&c.* which if you performe, and keep, it will be to your great honour, but if you break it I muſt hack off your Spurrs from your Heeles, as unworthy of this dignity, which will be a great diſhonour to you, which God forbid.

Then all of them ſtaying in the Hall, an officer of Arms declared unto them, that they were upon *Monday* following to be upon *Tower-hill*, by eight in the Morning, thence to proceed in their order, through *London* to *Whitehall* in the ſame habitts they then were knighted in, and that their Eſquires had a place appointed for them in the proceeding; that upon *Tueſday* the day of his Majeſty's coronation, they were in their purple Robes to attend by eight of the clock in the morning, in the court of Requeſts, and thence to proceed to the Abby-Church, where there was a place appointed

for

for them to ſitt and ſee the ſolemnity of his Majeſty's coronation, and ſo every one of them returned to his lodging.

NUMB. LXXXV.

Ad celebritatis famam oris remotioribus divulgandam, in *Alemanniam* & *Angliam* longe lateque per Regnum curſores Regii diriguntur & nuncii, qui utriuſque ſexus ingenuitatem oraculo vivæ vocis & apicibus invitarent ad ſolemnitatem in villa Sancti *Dionyſii* prope *Pariſius* peragendam.

Prima die menſis *Maii*, quæ fuit dies *Sabbathi*, ſole jam ſuos delectabiles radios abſcondente, Rex ad locum deditum ſolemnitati acceſſit. Quem modico temporis ſpatio interjecto, Regina *Siciliæ* ſecuta eſt. In curru de *Pariſii* exivit cum Ducum, militum & Baronum multitudine copioſa, quam etiam duo ejuſdem filii *Ludovicus* Rex *Siciliæ* & *Carolus* adoleſcentes egregii, equeſtres ſine medio ſequebantur, non tamen ſimili apparatu, quo prius ſoliti erant equitare. Nam ſcutiferorum priſcorum ceremonias gradatim ad tyronum ordinem aſcendentium ſervantes, tunica lata talari ex griſeto bene fuſco uterque indutus erat. Quicquid vero ornamenti eorum equi vel ipſimet deferebant, auro penitus carebat. Ex ſimili quoque panno quo ambo induti erant, quaſdam portiunculas complicatas ac ſellis equorum a tergo alligatas deferebant, ut armigerorum antiquorum peregre proficiſcentium ſpeciem denotarent. In hoc ſtatu cum matrem uſque ad Sanctum *Dionyſium* conduxiſſent, in ſecretioribus locis nudi in præparatis balneis ſe mundarunt. Quo peracto, circa noctis initium ad Regem redeunt ſalutandum, a quo benigne ſuſcepti ſunt, & tunc ad Eccleſiam feſtinans, eo ſequi ſe præcepit modo qui ſequitur. Indumentis prædictis exuti, mox veſtimentis novæ militiæ adornantur. Ex oloſerico rubino veſtimenta duplicia minutis variis foderata deferebant, unum de ſubtus rotundum ad talos uſque protenſum, alterum ad modum Imperialis chlamydis a ſcapulis ad terram dependentis. Quo habitu diſtincti, & abſque caputiis ad Eccleſiam ſunt adducti. Inſignium virorum comitiva præibat & ſequebatur. Domini Duces *Burgundiæ* & *Turoniæ* ad lævam & ad dexteram *Ludovicum* Regem *Siciliæ* deducebant, Dux etiam *Borbonienſis* & Dominus *Petrus* de *Navarra Carolum* deducebant. Et hi omnes cum Rege ante martyrum corpora ſacroſancta, peracta

acta oratione, cum pompa qua venerant, coenaturi in aulam Regiam redierunt. Tunc in mensa Regis, Regina *Siciliæ*, Duces *Burgundiæ* & *Turoniæ* ac Rex *Armeniæ* sedem superiorem tenuerunt. Ad lævam Rex *Siciliæ* & frater ejus *Carolus* consederunt. Celebrique cœna facta, omnibus Rex valedicens, ad quiescendum perrexit. Insignes vero adolescentes prædicti, habitu eodem quo prius, ante martyres reducuntur, ut ibidem, sicut mos antiquitus inolevit, in Orationibus pernoctarent. Sed quia tenera ætas amborum tanto labori minime correspondebat, ibi modica mora facta reducuntur, ut quieti indulgerent.

Illucescente aurora, futurorum militum ductores prænominati ad Ecclesiam accedentes, adolescentes Regios prostratos ante pignora martyrum sacrosancta repererunt, quos ad domum reducentes, expectare missarum solemnia præceperunt. Hæc *Antissiodorensis* Episcopus cum conventu monasterii celebranda susceperat, ut novæ militiæ insignia sanctius conferrentur. Ad quod etiam decentius peragendum, Rex brevi nobilium vallatus multitudine ad Ecclesiam pervenit. Duo armigeri corporis ejus custodes præcipui, evaginatos enses per cuspidem deferentes, in quorum summitate aurea calcaria dependebant, per claustri portam Ecclesiam sunt ingressi, quos Rex longo & Regali epitogio indutus, ac postmodum Rex *Siciliæ* cum fratre, ordine quo prius, sequebantur. Qui cum ad altare martyrum perveniissent, ac ibidem Reginas *Franciæ* & *Siciliæ* ac cæterarum Dominarum insigne contubernium expectassent, jubente Rege missa solemnis inchoatur. Hoc peracto, Episcopus protinus Regem adiit, & in ejus præsentia ambo adolescentes flexis genibus petierunt ut tyronum adscriberentur numero, qui cum ab eis juramentum solitum exegisset, eos noviter accinxit baltheo militari, & per Dominum de *Chaviniaco* calcaribus deauratis eos jussit Rex *Carolus* insigniri. In hoc statu, prius tamen ab Episcopo benedictione percepta, in aulam Regiam reducuntur, ubi cum Rege prandium & cœnam acceperunt, utriusque sexus evocata nobilitate assistente, quæ ineffabiliter congaudens, tripudiando pernoctavit.

Die Lunæ subsequente, circa diei horam nonam, sicut condictum fuerat, Rex viginti duobus electis militibus spectatæ strenuitatis indici jussit hastiludiorum spectaculum ut cum quanto apparatu possent & scirent, illud redderent gloriosum.

Quod & peragere maturarunt. Nam mox in equis criſtatis, auro fulgentibus armis, & ſcutis viridibus inſignitis, quos etiam ſequebantur qui lanceas & galeas ſolemniter vectitabant, ad Regem pervenerunt & ibidem inſignem catervam Dominarum quæ ipſorum ductrices exiſterent, dignum duxerunt aliquamdiu præſtolari. Eæ juſſu Regis ad numerum militum præelectæ, veſtimentis ſimilibus ex viridi valde fuſco cum ſertis aureis ac gemmatis, cultu Regio phaleratis inſedentes ad ejus præſentiam adducuntur. Et ſicut inſtructæ fuerant, de ſinu ſuo funiculos ſericos extrahentes, dulciter prædictis militibus porrexerunt, & eorum ſiniſtris lateribus adhæſerunt, cum lituis & inſtrumentis muſicis eos uſque ad campum agoniſtarum deducentes. Ardor inde Martius militum animos incitavit ut repetitione ictuum lancearum uſq; ad Solis occaſum, laudis & probitatis titulos mererentur. Tum Dominæ, quarum ex arbitrio ſententia bravii dependebat, nominarunt quos honorandos & præmiandos ſingulariter cenſuerunt. Quarum ſententiam gratanter Rex audiens, & ipſam munificentia ſolita cupiens adimplere, præfatos viros egregios pro qualitate meritorum donis dotavit ingentibus. Et inde cœna peracta, quod reliquum noctis fuit, tripudiando tranſactum eſt.

Militari tyrocinio peracto, ſequens dies ad ſimilia exercenda viginti duobus electis ſcutiferis aſſignatur & pari pompa ut prius a totidem Domicellis in campum ducti fuerunt, ubi alternatis ictibus mutuo uſque ad noctem conflixerunt. Cœnaque laute Regio more eſt peracta, cum Dominæ nominaſſent quos ſuper cæteros elegerant præmiandos.

Quia exercitium illud militare Rex per triduum ſtatuerat exerceri, die ſequenti, priori tamen ordine non ſervato, indifferenter milites cum ſcutiferis ludum laudabiliter peregerunt, & ut prius virtutis præmia receperunt, qui judicio Dominarum ſe habuerunt fortius. Sic nox quarta finem dedit choreis.

Sequenti die, Regia refectione percepta, Rex pro cujuſcunque merito milites & armigeros laudavit non ſine fluxu munerum, munificentiæque Regalis manum porrigens liberalem, Dominas & Domicellas armillis & muneribus aureis & argenteis oloſericiſque donavit inſignioribus, omnibuſque cum pacis oſculo valedixit, & conceſſit licentiam redeundi.

Entrevens de Ch. iv. *Emper.* &c. *par* Godefroy *p.* 127 &c.

NUMB. LXXXVI.

Cum Domino. Anno 1260. die octava *Aprilis* in Conſilio generali congregato more ſolito ad ſonum campanæ, & tubarum Domini Domini conſtituerunt, quod ſecunda Dominica Menſis *Mai* factus eſſet Miles ad expenſas publicas nobilis, & fortis vir Ildibrandus vocatus Giratasca. Venta igitur die ſecundi *Sabati* Menſis *Mai* valde mane præfatus nobilis, & ſtrenuus vir Ildibrandus bene, & nobiliter indutus cum magna maſnada ſuorum ingreditur Palatium, & iuravit fidelitatem Dominis Dominis, & Sancto Protectori Civitatis Arretij in manus Notarij, & ſuper ſancta Dei Evangelia: poſtea honorifice ivit ad Matrem Eccleſiam, ut haberet benedictionem, & pro honore eius adfuerunt ſex domicelli de Palatio, & ſex Tibicines de Palatio: In hora Prandij fuit ad prandendum, ex deliberatione Dominorum, in domum Domini *Ridolfoni*. Pro prandio fuit panis, & aqua, & ſal, ſecundum legem militiæ, & commenſales fuerunt cum eo dictus *Ridolfonus*, & duo Eremitæ Camaldulenſes, quorum ſenior poſt prandium fecit illi ſermonem de officio, & obligationibus Militis. Poſt hoc Ildibrandus ingreſſus eſt cubiculum in quo ſtetit ſolus per horam unam, & poſtea ingreſſus eſt ad eum Senex Monachus Sanctæ Floræ, cui devote, & humiliter confeſſus fuit peccata ſua, & accepit ab ipſo abſolutionem, & fecit penitentiam impoſitam. His peractis ingreditur cubiculum Barbitonſor, qui concinne caput, & barbam eius curavit, & poſtea ordinavit omnia, quæ neceſſaria erant ad Balneationem. Rebus ſic ſtantibus ex deliberatione Dominorum venerunt ad domum *Ridolfoni* quatuor ſtrenui Milites *Andreaſſus* filius Marabuttini, *Albertus* Domigianus, *Gilfredus* Guidoternus, & *Vgus* de Sancto Polo cum maſnada nobilium domicellorum, & cum turba Ioculariorum, Meneſtreliorum, & Tibicinum. *Andreaſſus*, & *Albertus* ſpoliaverunt Ildibrandum, & collocaverunt eum in Balneum; *Gilfredus* autem Guidoternus, & *Vgus* de Sancto Polo dederunt illi optima documenta de munere, & officio novi Militis, & de magna dignitate. Poſt horam unam Balnei poſitus fuit in lecto mundo, in quo lintea erant albiſſima, & finiſſima de muſſali, & papilio, & alia neceſſaria lecti de drappo ſerico albo erant. Permanſit Ildibrandus per horam unam in lecto, & cum iam nox appropinquaret fuit veſtitus de Medialana alba cum caputio, & fuit cinctus cinctura corta-

cea, Sumpſit refectionem ex ſolo pane, & aqua; & poſtea cum *Ridolfono*, & quatuor ſupradictis ivit ad Matrem Eccleſiam, & per totam noctem vigilavit in Capella, quæ eſt a manu dextra, & oravit Deum, & Sanctiſſimam Matrem Virginem, & Sanctum Donatum, ut facerent eum bonum militem, honoris plenum, & juſtum. Adſtiterunt illi per totam noctem cum magna devotione duo Sacerdotes Eccleſiæ, & duo Clerici minores; item quatuor pulcræ, & nobiles domnicellæ, & quatuor nobiles domnæ ſeniores nobiliter indutæ, quæ per totam noctem oraverunt Deum, ut hæc Militia eſſet in honorem Dei, & Sanctiſſimæ Matris ejus Virginis, & Sancti Donati, & totius Sanctæ univerſalis Eccleſiæ. *Ridolfonus*, & quatuor alii ſupradicti iverunt ad dormiendum; ſed ante auroram redierunt. Orta jam aurora Sacerdos benedixit gladium, & totam armaturam a galea uſque ad ſolerettas ferreas; poſtea celebravit Miſſam, in qua *Ildibrandus* accepit a Sacerdote humiliter, & cum magna devotione Sanctiſſimum, & Sacratiſſimum Corpus, & Sanguinem Domini noſtri Jeſu Chriſti. Poſt hoc obtulit Altari unum magnum Cereum viride, & libram unam argenti bonorum denariorum Piſanorum; item obtulit pro redemptione animarum Sancti Purgatorii libram unam argenti bonorum denariorum Piſanorum. His peractis portæ Eccleſiæ apertæ fuerunt, & omnes redierunt in Domum *Ridolfoni*, in qua Domicelli de Palatio nobilem, & divitem refectionem præparaverant; ponendo ſupra unam tabulam magnam, magnam quantitatem trageæ, diverſa genera tartararum, & alia ſimilia cum optima Guarnaccia, & Tribbiano. Facta refectione *Ildibrandus* ivit aliquantum ad dormiendum. Interim cum eſſet jam hora redeundi ad Eccleſiam, novus futurus miles ſurrexit e lecto, & fuit indutus ex drappis omnibus albis ſericeis cum cinctura rubra auro diſtincta, & cum ſimili ſtola. Interim Tibicines de Palatio, & Joculares, & Meneſtrelii tangebant ſua inſtrumenta, & canebant varias ſtampitas in laudem Militiæ, & novi futuri Militis. Poſtea omnes iverunt ad Matrem Eccleſiam cum magna turba militum, & nobilium Domicellorum, & magna quantitate plebis vociferantis Vivat Vivat. In Eccleſia incœpit Miſſa magna, & ſolemnis. Ad Evangelium tenuerunt enſes nudos, & elevatos *Ludovicus* de *Odomeris*, *Antonius* a Mammi, Cercaguerra illorum de Gioncolis, & *Guillelmus Miſerangeſchi*. Poſt Evangelium *Ildibrandus* juravit alta voce quod ab illa hora in antea

antea foret fidelis, & Vassallus Dominorum Dominorum Communis Civitatis *Arretii*, & Sancto Donato. Item alta voce juravit quod juxta suum posse defenderet semper Domnas, Domnicellas, pupillos, orphanos, & bona Ecclesiarum contra vim, & potentiam injustam potentium hominum, & contra illorum gualdanas juxta suum posse. Post hoc Amphosus Busdragus cinxit Ildibrandum calcare aurato in pede dextro, & D. Testa dictus Lupus cinxit cum calcare aurato in pede sinistro. Post hæc pulchra nobilis Domnicella *Alienora* filia *Berengherii* gladium illi cinxit. Postea *Ridolfonis* de more dedit illi Gautatam, & dixit illi. Tu es Miles nobilis Militiæ equestris, & hæc Gautata est in recordationem illius, qui te armavit militem, & hæc Gautata debet esse ultima injuria, quam patienter acceperis.

Finita celebratione Sacrosancti Sacrificii Missæ cum tubis, & timpanis redierunt omnes ad domum *Ridolfoni*. Ante portam D. *Ridolfoni* stabant duodecim pulcræ, & nobiles Domnicellæ cum guirnaldis de floribus in capite tenentes in manibus catenam ex floribus, & herbis contextam, & hæ Domnicellæ facientes serralium nolebant, quod novus miles intraret in domum *Ridolfoni*. Novus autem Miles dono dedit illis divitem annulum cum rosa aurea, & dixit, quod juraverat se defensurum esse Domnas, & Domnicellas, & tunc illæ permiserunt illi, ut intraret in Domum, in qua a Domicellis de Palatio magnum Prandium paratum fuerat, in quo multi milites, & seniores sederunt. In medio prandii Domini Domini miserunt divitem donum novo Militi, scilicet duas integras, & fortes armaturas ferreas, unam albam cum clavellis argenteis, alteram viridem cum clavellis, & ornamentis auratis, duos nobiles, & grandes equos alemannicos unum album, alterum nigrum, duos Roncinos, & duas nobiles, & ornatas vestes armaturæ superimponendas. Inter prandendum projecta fuit ex fenestris ad populum, qui erat in Strata, magna quantitas tragea, multi panes muftacei, multa gallina, & pipiones, & magna aucarum quantitas, unde magna, & incredibilis lætitia in toto illa contrata erat, populus exclamabat Vivat Vivat, & orabat, ut frequentius hæc festivitas fieret, cum jam essent plures quam viginti anni quod facta non fuisset. Post prandium novus Miles *Ildibrandus* Armatura illa tota alba, quæ benedicta fuerat in Missa ad autoram armatus fuit, & cum eo armati fuerunt multi nobiles homines.

Postea

Postea *Ildibrandus* adscendit in equum album, & ivit ad Plateam positus in medio a Luchino Tastonis supranomine dicto Pescolla, & a Farolfo Cateriaccio vocato Squarcina cum ornatis scutiferis lanceis, & scutos deportantibus. In Platea præparatum erat magnum Torneamentum, multæque Domnæ, & Domnicellæ in fenestris erant, & multa turba populi in Platea. Sex Judices Torneamenti fuerunt Brunus Bonajutæ, Naimerius de Totis, Ubertus de Palmiano dictus Pollezza, Guidoguerra Montebuonus, Bertoldus olim Cenci vocatus Barbaquadra, & Nannes de Fatalbis vocatus Mangiabolzonus. Hastiludium prius factum fuit de corpore ad corpus cum lanceis absque ferro acuto, sed cum trappellis obtusis, in quo novus Miles bene, & fortiter se gessit, & cucurrit primo de corpore ad corpus contra Jacobum a domo Bovacci, secundo contra Inghilfredum Guascionis supranomine vocatum Scannaguelfos, tertio contra Godentium Tagliaboves. Postea fuit factum torneamentum cum evaginatis ensibus, & res fuit pulcra, & terribilis, & tanquam vera guerra esset, & per gratiam Dei nihil mali, vel dampni accidit, nisi quod in Brachio sinistro leviter vulneratus fuit Philippus illorum a Focognano. Magnam autem virilitatem monstravit Pierus Paganellus, cui cum ex ictu ensis projecta esset galea de capite, & remansisset cum capite nudo, & absque birreto ex maculis, noluit tamen ex torneamento exire, ut honeste poterat; sed intentus ad bene agendum, & ad gloriam acquirendam scuto cooperiebat caput suum, & in majori folta pugnantium se se immiscebat. Appropinquante jam vespere cum magno strepitu tubarum indictus fuit finis torneamenti, & Judices primum premium dederunt novo Militi. Secundum Piero Paganello, tertium Vico de Pantaneto, qui currens de corpore ad corpus cum Toniaccio illorum de Bostolis, lancea illum de equo projecerat, licet multi dicerent, quod hoc non fuit ex defectu Toniacci, sed equi ipsius, tamen Toniaccius de Bostolis non potuit se se eximere quin deportaretur in Barella derisoria facta de fustis. Novus autem Miles suum premium dono misit per duos ornatos scutiferos nobili, & pulchræ Domnicellæ Alionoræ, quæ in Ecclesia cinxerat ipsi ensem Militiæ, & premium fuit unum Bravium de drappo sericeo vermiculato. Post hoc cum jam esset nox alta novus Miles *Ildibrandus* cum quantitate luminarium, & cum tubis, & buccinis rediit in domum *Ridolfoni*, ubi cœnavit cum amicis,

amicis, & conſanguineis, & poſt cœnam diſtribuit honorifica munera *Ridolfono*, & omnibus illis, qui aliquam operam præſtiterunt. Habuerunt etiam ſua munera Domnæ, & Domnicellæ, quæ in nocte vigiliæ *Ildibrando* adſtiterant, ec.

Hæc ſcripſi ego Pierus filius Mattei a Pionta clericus anno ætatis meæ 50. qui vidi aliam ſimilem ſolempnitatem quando anno milleſimo dugenteſimo, & quadrageſimo Domno Papa Gregorio ſedente, & Domno Friderigo Imperatore Sereniſſimo imperante factus Miles Corradus Moſnaderius in Eccleſia Sancti *Pieri*, ſed illa ſolempnitas non fuit tam magnifica, quam fuit iſta Domini *Ildibrandi*, quæ vere fuit magnificentiſſima, ec. *Della ſeguenta Scrittura, che racconta, come in Firenze furon fatti Cavalieri Giovanni, e Gualtieri Panciatichi ne ſono ſtato favorito dal Sig.* Conte Lorenzo Magalotti, *che ne conſerva copia in un Libro diverſe Scritture antiche raccolte da uno de ſuoi nobiliſſimi Antenati.*

1388. Die 25 *Aprilis* 1388. præſentibus Ser Dominico Ser Salvi, Fratre *Georgio*.

Domini fecerunt Sindicum ad militiam Domini *Joannis* de *Panciatichis*, & *Gualtieri* filii *Bandini*, poſtea nominati Domini *Bandini*, & ad omnia, & omnes actus & ceremonias Dominum *Gabrielem Aiimo* de *Venetiis* Capitaneum Populi.

Die 25 *Aprilis* 1388. Indictione 11. præſentibus *Agbinolfo* D. *Gualterotti*, *Nicolaio Nicolai*, *Laurentio* D. *Palmerii*, & *Franciſco* Nerii Fioravantis in Eccleſia Sancti *Joannis*.

1. Caput, & barbam ſibi facit fieri pulcrius quam prius eſſet, & caput, & voluit pro completo haberi factus per Dominum. C. hoc modo quod manu tetigit barbam.

2. Intret balneum in ſignum lotionis peccati, & cujuſlibet vitii, ec. puritatis prout eſt puer, qui exit de Baptiſmate. Commiſit quod fieret per Dominum *Philippum* de *Magalottis*. D. *Michaelem* de Medicis, & D *Thomaſium* de *Sacchettis*, & pro eis balnearetur, & ſic balneatus fuit.

3. Statim poſt Balneum intret lectum purum, & novum in ſignum magnæ quietis, quam quis debet acquirere virtute Militiæ, & per Militiam. Miſſus in lectum per prædictos Commiſs. ec.

4. Aliquantulum in lecto ſtrato exeat, & veſtiatur de drappo albo, & ſericeo in ſignum nitiditatis, quam debet cuſtodire Miles libere, & pure. De mandato Capitanei indutus albo, & ſic illo ſero remanſit inter tertiam, & quartam horam noctis.

5. In-

5. Induatur roba vermilia pro ſanguine, quem Miles debet fundere pro ſervitio Domini noſtri Jeſu Chriſti, & pro Sancta Eccleſia. Die 26 dicti Menſis de mane in dicta Eccleſia præſentibus ſupradictis de mandato, & commiſſione Capitanei exutus eſt, & indutus vermilio per dictos Milites.

6. Calcetur caligis bunis in ſignum terræ, quia omnes ſumus de terra, & in terram redibimus. Factum eſt de caligis nigre de ſirico ſucceſſive per dictos tres Milites.

7. Surgat incontinenti, & cingatur una cinctura alba in ſignum Virginitatis, & puritatis, quam Miles multum debet inſpicere, & multum procurare ne fedet corpus ſuum. Factum eſt, & cinxit eum Capitaneus.

8. De calcare aureo, ſive aurato in ſignum promptitudinis ſervitii militaris, & per militiam requiſiti prout volumus alios Milites eſſe ad noſtram juſſionem. Dicta die 26. ſuper Arengheria factum mandato, ut ſupra, per D. *Vannem* de *Caſtellanis*, & *Nicolaum Pagnozzi*.

9. Cingatur enſis in ſignum ſecuritatis contra Diabolum: Et duo tallii ſignificant diretturam, & legalitatem prout eſt defendere pauperem contra divitem, & debilem contra fortem. Factum per Dom. Donatum de Acciaivolis.

10. Alba infula in capite in ſignum, prout debet facere opera pura, & bona, ita debet reddere animam puram, & bonam Domino noſtro. Omiſſum fuit, quia non erat infula.

11. Alapha pro memoriâ ejus, qui Militem fecit.

Non debet Miles aliquid villanum, vel turpe facere timore mortis, vel carceris. Quatuor generalia faciat Miles.

Primo non ſit in loco, in quo falſum judicium detur. Secundo non de proditione tractare, & inde diſcedere, niſi alias poſſet reſiſtere. Tertio non ubi Dama, vel Damigella exconſilietur, ſed conſulere recte. Quarto jejunare *die Veneris* in memoriam Domini noſtri, ec. niſi valetudine, vel mandato Superioris, ec. vel alia juſta cauſa.

Dicto die 26 *Aprilis* factus fuit Miles armatus *Gualterius*, poſtea ob memoriam Patris dictus Dominus *Bandinus*, & factus fuit per Capitaneum Sindicum, ec. Calciatus calcaribus per Dom. *Robertum Pieri Lippi*, & Dom. *Baldum* de *Catalanis*, & cinctus enſe per Dom. *Pazzinum* de *Strozzis*, omnia in præſentia D. D. & plurium aliorum Militum, & populi multitudo maxima fuit.

D. *Joannes*

D. *Joannes* promiſit, & juravit pro ſe, & pro D. *Bandino*, & promiſit quando eſſet legittimæ ætatis infra annum coram D. D. ratificaret, & juraret.

Fran. Redi Bacco in Toſcana. p. 163 &c.

Numb. LXXXVII.

A treſnoble, & excellent Prince Johan *de* France, *Duc de* Normendie, *& aiſne filz de* Phelippe *par la grace de dieu Roy de* France, *Frere* Johan *de* Vignay *voſtre Petit religieux entre les autres de voſtre Seignorie paix, ſante, joie, & victorie ſur vos ennemis —— Je mis un petit livret de* Latin *en* Francois —— *ſelon le gieu des eſchez.* &c.

De l'eſtat & de la fourme des Chevaliers, & de l'ordre de Chevalerie.

Le Chevalier doit eſtre ſur ſon cheval arme de toutes armes, le haubert veſtu, le heaume en la teſte, arme de jambes, & de piez, la lance en la main deſtre, couvert a ſa ſeneſtre de ſon eſcu, ſes plates veſtues, ſicome il appartient. Et doit avoir cheval convenable, & enſeignie pour Bataille. Et leur doit ſouvenir, que quant ils furent faiz Chevaliers, ils furent premierement baignez, le chief laue & roingne, & la barbe tondue ou reſe. Et par ce eſt il ſignifie, que tout auſſi comme ilz ont les membres nettoiez par dehors, auſſi doivent ilz eſtre nez pardedens, & purs en conſcience & en penſee. Et ſe doivent garder nettement & baigner en toute cointoiſie & honeſte. Et apres ce baing furent conchiez en un lit net & noble, que ſignifie que ilz doivent conquerre par leur chevalerie leur lit en paradis. Quant ilz ſe leverent du lit, ilz furent premierement veſtitz de robe linge blanche, & nette, par laquelle il leur eſt donne a entendre, quil doivent tousjours tenir leur corps pur & net en chaaſte & ſans vice d'ordure. Et puis furent veſtuz par deſſus d'une robe vermeille, laquelle ſignifie, que tout bon chevalier doit ſouffrir paine, & eſpandre ſon ſanc pour le droit de legliſe, & de ſa terre, & pour le droit naturel ſon ſeigneur deffendre. Et puis ilz furent chauſſez de chauſſes noires en ſigne de humilite, ſi que il li ſouviengne dont il vint, qui il eſt, & ou il yra, & doit penſer que il eſt mortel; Et apres ce li furent chauſſiez deux eſperons dorez pour ſon cheval inſticier & contraindre, parquoy il eſt ſignifie, que tout auſſi comme

il contraint ſon cheval de eſtre preſt & vite a ſon talent, doit il avoir ſa penſee eſmeue a dieu ſervir, amer, & honorer. Et dont apres lui eſt l'eſpee cainte, dont la renge doit eſtre blanche & nette, & appellee ſengle de Chevalerie, & par l'eſpee, qui trenche de ii pars ſont ſignifies ii choſes, qui ſont en tous bons Chevaliers, ceſt de garder & deffendre le droit temporel & l'eſpirituel, Et ces deux trenchans ſont appliquiez aux glaives, des quelz Jheſu Criſt diſt en l'evangile, quant il commanda a ſes diſciples & diſt. Qui na glaiue vende ſa cote & lachate, & Saint Pierre li diſt, Sire vecy deux glaiues, & il reſpondu il ſouffit, Mais les diſciples ſi ne ſaviſerent pas pourquoy il diſoit ce, qui ſignifioit par lui le povoir qu'il donna a Saint Pierre de pardonner & corriger pechiez. Et par lautre il ſignifiat le glaiue de punition, qui appartient aux Princes temporelz, Car il neſt nul Prince, a qui il n'appartiengne eſtre Chevalier. Et par la renge blanche il eſt ſignifie, que il doit nettement tenir ſes Rains, qui en ſont cains de toute ordure de luxure. Mais tout avant que il prengne eſperons ne eſpee, il doit veiller toute nuit en l'egliſe en prieres & en oroiſons, en requerant a dieu, que il lui vueille donner grace & vertu & povoir de maintenir bien & honeſtement l'eſtat de Chevalerie. Et quant toutes ces choſes ſont ordennez & faictes ilz doivent aler devant le Roy, ou le Prince, qui les fait Chevaliers, & eſtre agenoulz devant lui en ſigne de humilite & auſſi comme par maniere de droite feaulte, Car ilz ne doivent jamais faire ne penſer contre lui choſe qui ne ſoit honeſte, & raiſonnable. Et le Seigneur leur doit donner une Colee en ſigne de proeſte & de hardement, Et que il leur ſouviegne de celui noble homme qui la fait Chevalier. Et donc les doit le Seigneur baiſier en la bouche en ſigne de paix & d'amour. Et quiconques recoit en ſoy l'ordre de Chevalerie, il doit avoir franchiſe, loyalte, amour & miſericorde, & doit amer les drois a garder, & deffendre, ſouſtenir & aidier aux vefues, & aux orphelins, ſicome cil qui par l'ordre de Chevalrie eſt ennobli d'armes corporells, & doit reſplendir par vertu de bonns meurs, Car tant comme la dignite & la nobleſſe de Chevalerie ſurmonte les autres perſons par reverence & par honneur, de tant doit il plus apparoir ſur les autres par vertu & par courtoiſie.

NUMB. LXXXVIII.

Cotton Library. Nero, C. 9. 11. f. 168.

The maner of maykynge Knyghtes aftyr the Cuſtome of Engelonde in tyme of peas and at the Coronacion [of the Kyng] that is Knyghtes of the Bathe.

Whanne a Eſquyer comyth into the Courte, for to receyve the Ordre of Knyghthode, in tyme of peas, aftyr the cuſtome of *Engelond*; he ſhall be worſhipfully receyved of the Officeres of the Courte, as of the Styward, or Chaumberleyn, yf they be preſent, and elles of the Marchalles, and Uſheres, in the abſence of the Styward, and Chamberleyn. And than there ſhal be ordeyned twoo worſhipful Squyers wyſe, and wele norysſhed in curteſy, and expert in the deedes of Knyghthood: And they ſhal be governours to hym, to ſerve, and ordeyn, what ſhall longe to him for the tyme. And in caſe, that the Squyer come before dyner, he ſhall ſerve the Kyng of water, or of a dyſh only of the fyrſte courſe, And that is doo for to take leave of ſervyce of Squyers: Thanne his Governours ſhall lede hym into his Chambre, withoute ony more to be ſeyne [on] that day: And at even, the Governours ſhall ſende aftyr the Barbour, and he ſhall make redy a *Bathe*, in the beſt wyſe that he can: The fatte withinne, and withoute wrapped with lynnen cloth clene, and whyte, and covered with thycke Carpettes, or Mantelles, for colde of the nyght: Thanne ſhall the Squyers berde be ſhaven, and his hede rounded, which doone, the Governours ſhall goo unto the Kynge, and to hym ſay thus; Mooſte myghty Prince, oure ſoverayn Lord, loo, hit wexeth nere unto the evyn, and oure Maiſter is redy unto the *Bathe*, whanne it pleaſeth unto your royall mageſte; And upon that, the Kynge ſhall commaunde his Chamberleyne, to goo unto the Squyers Chambre, that is to be made Knyght, And to take with hym the mooſte worthy, and mooſte wyſe Knyghtes, that been there preſent, to thentent, that they ſhall the ſame Squyer truly counſeyle, enforme, and teche wyſely of the Ordre [of makyng] of Knyghthod. And ſoo with that, other yonge Squyers of Houſholde, with Mynſtrelles, ſyngynge, and daunſynge ſhall goo before the Chamberleyn, and the ſeyde Knyghtes, unto the tyme that they come unto the Chambre dore of the ſeyd Squyer, that is to be made Knyght; Whanne the Governours hering noyſe of Mynſtralles, Anoon they ſhall make naked theyr

Maiſter, and all naked ſhalbe put into the *Bathe*, The Menſtralles before the entre of the Chamberleyn, and other noble Knyghtes, ſhall abyde, and be ſtylle withoute noyſe togedyr with the ſayd Squyers, levynge their noyſe for the tyme; Which thynge doon, the Chamberleyn with the ſayde noble Knyghtes ſhall enter prevely, withoute noyſe, into the Chambre of the ſeyd Squyere, And whan they entre, everich to other ſhall do reverence, and worſhipp, which of them ſhalbe the fyrſte for to counſell the Squyer in the *Bathe*, of the Ordre, and the makynge to performe the Kyngs comaundement: And when they be accorded, than ſhal the fyrſte go the *Bathe*, and there he ſhall knele before the *Bathe* [ffat] ſeyenge ſecretly to the Squyer thus, Right dere brother, grete whorſhippe be this Ordre unto yow, And Almighty God yeve yow the prayſynge of all Knyghthod; Loo this is the Ordre; Be ye ſtronge in the feith of holy Chirche, [ſtedfaſte and abydyng in worde manly Protector unto Holy Chirch] and Wydowes, and Maydones oppreſſed releve, as right comaundith, yeve ye to evyrych his owne, with all thy mynde, above all thynge love and drede God; And above all other erthly thynges love the Kyng thy Sovrayn Lord, hym, and his right defende unto thy power, And before all worldly thyngis put hym in worſhipp, and thyngs that be not to be taken beware to begynne; In this wyſe or better &c. And whanne the Knyght [Eſquier] is thus counſelled, the ſame Knyght Counſeylour ſhall take in his hande water of the *Bathe*, and ſhall putte it upon the Shoulders of the Squyer, and take his leve to goon, and [ſo] departe; And the Governours at all tymes ſhall kepe the ſydes of the *Bathe*; In this wyſe ſhall all the other Knyghtes aforeſayd doon, evyrych aftyr other, in the beſt wyſe, that they can; And this doon, the Knyghtes without noyſe ſhall go out of the Chambre for the tyme; Than ſhall theyr Governours take their Maiſter oute of the *Bathe*, and ley hym ſoftly in his bed, to drye; And the bed ſhall not be of grete valewe, but withoute colour [Silour] or corteyns: And whan the Squyer is wele dryed, he ſhall ryſe out of his bed, and ſhall clothe hym warme for the wacthe of nyghte, and upon all his clothes he ſhall have a cape of black ruſſet, with longe ſleves, and the hoode ſewed unto the cape, in manere of an hermyte: The Squyer thus arrayde, and made redy, the Barbour ſhall put away the Bathe, and all thyng, that is aboute the Bathe, as wele withinne,

inne, as withoute: The Barbor ſhall take all for his fee; And alſo he ſhall have for his ſhavynge, lyke as it folowith heeraftyr, That is to wete, yf he be a Duke, an Erle, an Baron, or a Bachelere aftyr the cuſtome of the Courte, evyrych ſhall yeve aftyr his aſtate; And pryncipally yf Jugement be requyred, it ſhalbe than at the wyll of the Kynges mageſte; Aftyr this, the Governours ſhall open the dore of the Chambre, And the Knyghtes ſhall wyſely enter inne agen with Mynſtralles pleyinge in their inſtrumentis, and Squyers before them, ſyngyng, and daunſynge, ſhall lede the Squyer into the Chapell, And whan they be in the Chapell, there ſhalbe ordeyned ſpyces, and wyne for the Knyghtes, and Squyers; whiche thynge doone, the Governours ſhall lede theſe Knightes afore the Squyer, for to take theyr leve, And he with Sylence ſhall thanke them of theyr labours, and worſhippes, that they have doon unto hym, In that wyſe they ſhall goo oute of the Chapell, The Governours ſhall ſhutt the dore, tyll the dawnynge wex clere, and the Day come, And there ſhall abyde in the Chapell noon, but the [Squyer] the Squyers Governours, * Officers of Armes and the Wayte. In this wyſe, ſhall the Squyer all nyght [in the chapell] tyll it be day, abyde evyr in his Prayers, prayinge, and beſechynge almyghty God, and the bleſſed vyrgine *Marie* his Modir, that thylke paſſing temporall dignyte, he may receye to his worſhippe, and prayſynge [pleſynge] of God, the blyſſed vyrgyne *Marie* his Modir [of] holy Cherche, and the Ordre of Knyghthod: And whan the dawnynge comith, he ſhall have a Preſte, and be confeſſed, yef it will lyke hym of his Synnes, and Treſpaſſes, which thynge ended, he ſhall have his Matens, and Maſſe, and be comonyd, if he wyll: Aftyr his entre into the Chapell, he ſhall evyrmore have a ſerge, or a taper of Wex brennyng before hym, And whan Maſſe is begonne, oon of the Governours ſhall holde the taper brennyng before hym, unto the tyme that the Goſpell be begonne, And than he ſhall betake it unto his Maiſter, which ſhall holde it in his hande, tyll the Goſpell be endyd, alwey his hede beynge covryd; And at the ende of the Goſpell the Governour ſhall receyve the tapur agayne, and put it before his Maiſter unto the ende of the Maſſe: At the Levacioun of the Sacrament, oon of the Governours ſhall putte of the hoode

* *Officers of Armes omitted in my MS.*

of

of his Myaſter, And aftyr the ſight of the Sacrament, he ſhall doo it on ayen, tyll *In principio* be begonne; Oon of his Governours ſhall putte of his hoode, and make hym ſtande, and holde the ſayd taper in his hande, havynge in the ſeide taper ſtyckynge a peny nygh the lyght: And whan the preſt ſeith *Verbum caro factum eſt*, he ſhall knele down, and offre the tapre, and the peny. It is to wete, the taper to the worſhippe of God, And the peny to the worſhip of hym, that ſhall make hym Knyght; Theſe thynges doon, the Governours ſhall lede hym ayen into his Chambre, and ley him ayen in his bed, tyll it be forth dayes; And there he ſhall take the reſte, that the wacthe of the nyght made wery; ſo than the bedde ſhal be amended, and refreſhed before the tyme, that his Maiſter wake, that is to wete, with coverture of cloth of Gold, called *Siglyton*. And that ſhall be lyned with blewe carde. And whan they [Governors] ſee tyme, they ſhall goo to the Kynge, and ſeye to him thus, Moſte victorious Prynce, whan that it lykith unto youre high Mageſte, oure Maiſter ſhall awake; And theruppon ſhall the Kynge comaunde the Knyghtes * of Armez, Squyers, and Mynſtralles aforeſayd, that they goo unto the Chambre of the Squyer, to awake hym, array him, and clothe hym, and brynge hym into the Hall before the Kyng hymſelf: But before the comynge of the Knyghtes into the Squyers Chambre, the Governours ſhall ordeyne all maner neceſſaries redy by ordre, for to be delyvred unto the Knyghtes, And whanne theſe Knyghtes be come unto the Chambre of the Squyere, they ſhall enter ſoftly withoute noyſe, and ſey to the Squyere Sir, good day, It is tyme to aryſe: And with that, the Governours ſhall take, and arayſe him up by the Armes; Thanne the moſte worthy, and moſte wyſe ſhall take unto hym his Sherte, Another next worthy his Breche, the thyrde his dublet, the fourth ſhall cloth him with a ſurcot [gown] of rede Tartayn, [other twayn ſhall lyfte hym up of his bed] Other tweyne ſhall doon oon his hoſyn, which ſhal be of blac ſylke, or of blak cloth with ſoles of ledyr ſowed to them, Other tweyn ſhall boton his ſleves, Another ſhall gyrde him with a gyrdyll of whyte ledyr withoute harneyſe of ony metall of the breede of un ynche; Another ſhall kembe his hede [another ſhall put the Coyfe apon his hede] Another ſhall geve hym his mantell

* *Of Armes omitted in my MS.*

of

of the ſute of the curtyll of rede tarteryn faſtened with a lace of white ſylke, with a payre of white gloves hangynge at the ende of the lace; But he ſhall have of the Chaundeler of the houſholde the Corce [Coife] gyrdyll and the Gloves: And on the other ſyde the Chaundelere ſhall take for his fee all the Garmentes, and all the array, with all the neceſſaries, in the which the Squeyer was arrayde, and clothed the day that he entred into the Courte, for to take the ordre, togedyr with the bed in the which he lay furſt aftyr the *Bathe*, alſo wele the cloth of Gold called Siglaton, as other neceſſaries touchynge the ſayd bed [and over that the fyrſte robe in which he was clothed after the Ordur taken]. And this thynge fully doon, theſe wyſe Knyghtes ſhall lede this Squyer on horſebak unto the Kynge halle, all tymes the * Officers of Armes, and the Mynſtralles beyng before makyng theyr Menſtralſye, Theyr [the] horſe ſhall be arayde in this wyſe, he ſhall have a ſadyll covred with blak lether, the arſons of whyte tre, foure ſquare and blak ſtyroppes with gylt Irons, And his ſadyll ſhall have no Cropere, but a paytrell of blac lether with a croſſe plate [patee] before hangynge [beforn] upon the breſte of the horſe, his brydyll ſhall be blac lether pleyne with longe reynes in the gyſe of *Spayne*, and a croſſe plate [patee] in the forehede, And there ſhalbe ordeyned a yonge gentyll Squyer, for to ryde before this [the] Squyer that is to be made Knyght, And he ſhalbe opyn hede, And ſhall bere the ſwerd of the Squyer; the poynte downward, with ſpores hangyng upon the Swerd, And the Swerd ſhall have a whyte ſcabard, And fret with the gyrdell and ſcales [frette] with whyte lether withoute ony harneyſe, And the yonge gentyll Squyer ſhall holde the ſwerde by the poynte [and] in this wyſe: They [He] ſhull ryde to the Kyngs halle, all tymes the ſeyd Governours beynge redy to the Maiſter, as it is fyttynge to be, And the forſeyd noble and wyſe Knyghtes ſhall ſoberly lede this Squyer, as they owen; And whan the Squyer comyth before the hall dore; the Marchalles and Uſhers [beforn hym] ſhal be redy afore him in the moſte honeſte wyſe, that they can, ſeyinge thus, *Commith down*; And than he ſhall come down, The Marchall of *Englond* for his fee ſhall take the horſe, or 100s. This thyng thus doon, theſe wyſe Knyghtes ſhal lede the Squyere into the halle, or into the

* *Officers of Armes omitted in my MS.*

grete

grete Chambre unto his table; And forthwith he ſhall be putte at the begynnynge of the ſecunde table, tyll that the Kynge come, The ſeyd Knyghtes [ſtanding] aboute his Perſon, as on every ſyde, And the yonge Squyer ſwerd-berer before hym, ſtandyng with the ſwerd betwix the 2 Governours [aforeſeid] Whanne the Kyng comyth into the Hall, and perceyveth the Squyer redy to take the Ordre in dew wyſe, he askyth for the ſwerd, and the ſpores, The Kyngs Chambyrleyn ſhall take the ſwerd, and the ſpores oute of the handes of the yonge Squyere, And ſhall take and ſhewe them to the Kynge, The Kynge ſhall receyve the right ſpore, and betake it to oon of the moſte worthy that ſtandith aboute, commaundynge hym that he put it on the right hele of the Squyer, And by the Kyngs commaundement, that lord knelynge on the oon kne, ſhall take the Squyer by the right leg, and putte the [hys]foote upon his kne, and [ſoe] ſhall putte the ſpore uppon his hele, and [he] ſhall make a croſſe upon the kne of the Squyer, and ſhall kyſſe it, Thanne ſhall another lord put on the other hele an other ſpore in the ſame wyſe, that the other dyd, Thanne the Kynge of the mekeneſſe of his hygh myght, takyng the Swerd in his handes, ſhall gyrde therwith the Squyer; Thanne ſhall the Squyere lyft up his armes on high, and the Kynge ſhall put his armes about the nekke of the Squyer, and lyftynge up his right hande, he ſhall ſmyte the Squyer in the necke, ſeyeng thus. *Be ye a good Knyght, kyſſyng him.* Aftyrwarde theſe noble and wyſe Knyghtes aforeſayd, this new knyght ſhall lede into the Chapell with melody, as it is to forne ſeid, unto the high awtere, And there he ſhall ungyrthe hym, and his ſwerd with prayers and devocions ſhall offre to God, and to holy Cherche, moſte devoutly beſechyng God that thylke Ordre moſte worthy dewly he may kepe unto his ende; Theſe thyngs ſo doon, he ſhall take a ſoppe in wyne, And in the goynge oute of the Chapell, the Maiſter Cooke ſhalbe redy, and doo of his ſpores, And ſhall take hem to hym for his fee, And the reaſon is this, that in caſe be, that the Knyght do aftyr ony thynge that be defawte and repreef unto the Ordre of Knyghthod; The Maiſter Cooke thanne with a grete knyif, with which he dreſſeth his Meſſes, ſhall ſmyte of his ſpores from his heles, And therfore in Remembrance of this thyng, the ſpores of a new Knyght in order takynge, ſhalbe fee unto the Maiſter Cooke, perteyn-

perteynynge dewly unto his Offyce. Thanne ſhall theſe wyſe Knyghtes aforſayd, lede this newe Knyght into the hall ageyn, The which begynnyng the Table of Knyghtes, ſhall ſytte to mete, and the ſayd wyſe and noble Knyghtes ſhull ſytte aboute hym at the Table. And the noble Knyghtes [new Knyght] ſhalbe ſerved lyke as other been, And as for that tyme, he ſhall not ete nor drynk at the table, but yf grete nede be, nor he ſhall not move hym, nor loke hedyr nor thedyr, more than a Wyiff new wedded, And evyr more oon of his 2 Governours ſhall ſtonde by hym with a kerchief, of the which, if one nede come, he may ſerve hym: And whan the Kyng aryſeth from the Table, and goth into the Chambre, ohe newe Knyght ſhall be lad unto his chambre, with grete multitude of Knyghtes, Squyers and Mynſtralles joyeinge, ſyngynge, and daunceynge unto the entre of his Chambre: And there the Knyghtes Squyers and Mynſtralles ſhall take theyr leve, And the newe Knyght ſhall goe to ete, The dore ſhall be [faſt] cloſed, And he ſhall doo off his array, which ſhalbe yoven to the Kynges [off armys if thai be preſent, and iff thai be not preſent then to] other Herawdes of Armes. * *And alſo the ſaid Kyng of Armes and Herawdes ſhall have for the Office of Armes of every Duke, Erle, Barown, and Bachelere aftyr theyr aſtates, And of the leſſe* 20 s. *for their honours to ſhew and to tryc them in the Kyngs preſence and in the ſaid Court.* The grey cope ſhalbe unto the Wayte, or a noble for it. And aftyr this mete this noble newe Knyght anoon ſhalbe arayde with robe of blewe with ſtrayte ſleves, And he ſhall have uppon the lyft ſhuldere, a white lace of Sylk hangynge, And that lace he ſhall kepe in that wyſe above his clothynge withoutenforth from that day forth contynuelly uuto that tyme he gete hym ſom manere [name] of worſhippe by deſervynge, by wytneſſe of worthy Knyghtes, and Squyers, Kynges, outher Herawdes of Armes, And trewe Herawdes clerely theraftyr reported: Which reporte moſte entere into the eares of the worthy prynce, which hath made hym Knyght, or of ſom other, or elles of ſome noble Lady for to take away the lace fro the ſhulder, ſayıng thus. Right deere Lord, I have herd ſo moche of your worſhippes, and renown, that ye have doon in dyverſe partyes unto the

* *This Clauſe is omitted in my Copy.*

grete worſhippe of Knyghthod, to youre ſelf, and to hym, that made yow Knyght, that deſert and ryght wyll, that this lace be put and take away, But aftyr dyner the worſhipful and worthy Knyghtes and Squyers ſhall come afore the ſeyd newe Knyght, and hym ſhall lede to the Kyngs preſence, All tymes beyng before hym the ſaid Squyers Governours, And whanne the newe Knyght comyth into the Kyngs preſence, he ſhall knele before the Kynge, and ſhall ſey thus, Mooſt drad and mooſt myghty prynce of my lytlll power and of [what] that I may I thanke yow of all the worſhippes curteſies, [and] goodneſſe, which ye have doon unto me; And this ſeyd, he ſhall take leve of the Kynge, and upon that, the Governours ſhall goe and take charyte leve of theyr Mayſter, ſeyeng thus, Worſhipfull Syr, by the Kyngs commaundement, we have ſerved you, and that commaundement fulfylled, and performed to oure powere, and what we have doon in oure ſeruyce ageyn [agenſt] your reverence, we praye yow of youre grace to pardon us our negligence: Ferthermore of the cuſtom of the Kyngs Courte, we aske and requyre yow of Robys, and fees to the terme of oure [your] lyif covenable [and convenient] to the Kyngs Squyers, felowes to the Knyghtis of other landes.

Memorandum the blew Bachelers gowne ſhalbe fees to the Officers of Armes, wherfore they ſhall fynde the ſcochyns of Armes to ſet upon the Baynnes and beddis.

Numb. LXXXIX.

Cy apres enſuit, L'ordonnance, & maniere de creer, & faire nouveaulx Chevaliers du Baing, *au temps de paix ſelon la Cuſtume d'*Angleterre.

Quant ung Eſcuier uient en la Cour, pour recevoir l'ordre de Chevalrie, en tem de paix, ſelon la Cuſtume d'*Angleterre*, il ſera tres noblement receu par les Officiers de la Cour, comme le Seneſchal, ou du Chamberlain, ſi ils ſont preſens, & autrement par les Mareſchaux, & Huiſſiers. Et adonc ſeront ordonnez deux Eſcuiers d'onneur, ſaiges, & bien apris en courtoiſies, & nourritures, & en la maniere du fait de chevalrie, & ils ſeront Eſcuiers, & Gouverneurs de tout ce, qui appartient a celluy, qui prendra l'ordre deſus dict. Et au cas que l'Eſcuier vienge devant diſner, il ſervira le Roy de

† une

† une eſcuelle du premier cours ſeulement. Et puis les dicts Eſcuiers Gouverneurs admeneront l'Eſcuier, qui prendra l'ordre, en ſa chambre, ſans plus eſtre ueu en celle journee. Et au veſpre les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs envoyeront apres le Barbier, & il appareillera ung baing, gracieuſement appareille de toile, auſſy bien dedans la Cuve, que dehors: & que la Cuve ſoit bien couverte de tapiz, & manteaulx, pour la froidure de la nuyt. Et adoncques ſera l'Eſcuier rez la barbe, & les cheveulx ronde. Et ce fait, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs yront au Roy, & diront, Sire, il eſt veſpre, & l'Eſcuier eſt tout appareille au *baing*, quant vous plaira. Et ſur ce, le Roy commandera a ſon Chamberlan, qu'il admene avecques luy en la Chambre de l'Eſcuier les plus gentilz, & les plus ſaiges Chevaliers, qui ſont preſens, pour luy informer, & conſeillier, & enſeigner l'ordre, & le fait de chivalrie. Et ſemblablement que les autres Eſcuiers de l'oſtel, avec les meneſtrelx, voiſent pardevant les Chevaliers, chantans, danſans, & esbatans, juſques a l'uys de la chambre du dit Eſcuier.

Es quant les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs orront la noiſe des meneſtrelx, ilz deſpouilleront l'Eſcuier, & le mettront tout nu dedens le *baing*. Mais a l'entree de la chambre, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs feront ceſſer les meneſtrelx, & Eſcuiers auſſi pour le temps, & ce fait les gentilz ſaiges Chevaliers entreront en la Chambre tout coyement ſans noiſe faire: Et adoncques les Chevaliers feront reverence l'un a l'autre, qui ſera le premier pour conſeillier l'Eſcuier au *baing*, l'ordre, & le fait. Et quant ilz ſeront accordes, dont yra le premier au *baing*, & ylec s'agenoillera par devant la Cuve, en diſant en ſecret. Sire, a grant honneur ſoit il pour vous ceſt *baing*, & puis lui monſtrera le fait de l'ordre, au mieulx qu'il pourra, & puis mettra de l'eaue du baing deſſus l'eſpaulle de l'Eſcuier; & prendra conge: Et les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs garderont les coſtes du *baing*. En meſme maniere feront tous les autres Chevaliers, l'un apres l'autre, tant qu'ils ayent tous fait. Et donc partiront les Chevaliers hors de la Chambre pour ung temps; ce fait les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs prendront l'Eſcuier hors du *baing*, & le mettront en ſon lit, tant qu'il ſoit ſechie: & ſoit le dit lit ſimple ſans courtines. Et quant il ſera ſechie, il levera hors du lit, & ſera addurne, & veſti bien chauldement

† D'eau, ou de une &c.

pour le veillier de la nuyt. Et ſur tous ſes draps il veſtira une cotte de drap Rouſſet, avecques unes longues manches, & de le chapperon, a la ditte Robe, en guiſe de ung hermite. Et l'Eſcuier auſſi hors du baing, & attorne, le barbier oſtera le baing, & tout ce, qu'il a entour, auſſi bien dedens, comme en dehors, & le prendra pour ſon fie, enſemble ponr le collier, comme enſi, ſi ceſt chevalier ſoit Conte, Baron, Baneret ou Bachelier, ſelon la cuſtume de la Cour; & ce fait, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs ouvreront l'uys de la Chambre, & feront les ſaiges Chevaliers reentrer, pour mener l'Eſcuier a la chapelle, & quant ilz feront entrez, les Eſcuiers esbatans & danſans, ſeront admenes pardevant l'Eſcuier avecques les Meneſtrels faiſans leurs Melodies, juſques a la Chapelle. Et quant ilz ſeront entrez en la chapelle, les eſpices, et le vin ſeront preſtz a donner aus ditz Chevalieurs, & Eſcuiers: Et les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs admeneront les Chevaliers par devant l'Eſcuier pour prendre congie; & il les mercira touts enſemble de leur travail, honneur, & courtoiſies, qu'ilz lui ont fait: & en ce point, ilz departiront hors de la chappelle. Et ſur ce les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs fermieront la porte de la Chapelle, & ny demorera, force Eſcuier, ſes Gouverneurs, ſes preſtres, le Chandellier, & le Guet, & en ceſte guiſe demoura l'Eſcuier en la Chapelle, tant qu'il ſoit jour, toujours en oraiſon & prieres, requerant le puiſſant Seigneur, & la benoite mere, que de leur digne grace, lui donnent pouvoir, & comfort a prendre ceſte haulte dignite temporelle, en l'honneur, & lovenge de leur, de Sainte Egliſe, & de l'ordre de Chevaleree, & quant on verra le point du jour, on querra le preſtre, pour le Confeſſer de tous ſes pechies, & orra ſes Matines, & meſſe, & puis ſera accommunichie, s'il veut: Mais de-puis l'entree de la Chapelle, aura ung cierge ardant devant lui, la meſſe commencee ung des Governeurs tiendra le Cierge devant l'Eſcuier, juſque a l'evangille, & a l'evangille, le Gouverneur baillera le cierge a l'Eſcuier juſques a la fin de la dit evangele, l'Eſcuier Gouverneur oſtera le cierge, and le mettra devant l'Eſcuier, juſques a la fin. de la ditte meſſe, & a la levacion du Sacrament ung des Gouverneurs oſtera le Chapperon de l'Eſcuier, & apres le Sacrament remettra juſques a l'evangile, *in principio*, & au commencement de *in principio*, le Goverueur oſtera le chapperon de l'Eſcuier, & le fera. eſter, & lui donnera le cierge en ſa main: Maies quil y ait ung denier, au plus, pres de la lumiere fichie; & quant ce vient

verbum

verbum caro factum eſt, l'Eſcuier ſe genoillera, & offra le cierge & le denier: ceſt aſſavoir, le cierge en l'onneur de dieu; & le denier en l'onneur de lui, qui le ſera Chevalier. Ce fait, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs remeneront l'Eſcuier en ſa chambre, & le mettront en ſon lit, juſques a haulte jour, & quant il ſera en lit, pendant le temps de ſon reueillier, il ſera amende, ceſt aſſavoir, avec ung couverton d'or, appelle *Sigleton*, & ce ſera linee du carde. Et quant il ſemblera temps aux gouverneurs, ilz yront au Roy, & lui diront, Sire, quant il vous plaira, notre maiſtre reueillera, & a ce, le Roy commandera les ſaiges Chevaliers, Eſcuiers, & Meneſtrelx, d'aler a la chambre du dit Eſcuier pour le reueillier, attourner, veſtir & admener pardevant lui, en ſa ſale; mais par devant leur entree, & la noiſe des meneſtrelz oye, les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs ordonneront toutes ſes neceſſaries prets par ordre, a baillier aux Chevaliers pour attourner & veſtir l'Eſcuier, & quant les Chevaliers ſeront venus a la chambre de l'Eſcuier, ils entreront enſemble en ſilence, & diront a l'Eſcuier, Sire, le tresbon jour, vous ſoit donne, il eſt temps de vous leuer, & adrecier, & avec ce les Gouverneurs le prendront par les braz, & le feront drecier, le plus gentil, ou le plus ſaige Chevalier donnera a l'Eſcuier ſa chemiſe, ung autre lui baillera ſes brages, le tiers lui donnera ung pourpoint, ung autre lui veſtira avec ung Kyrtel de rouge tartarin, deux autres le leveront hors du lit, & deux autres les chauſſeront, mais ſoient les chauſſes denouz avecquez ſemelles de cuir, & deux autres laſceront ſes manches, & ung autre le ceindra de la ſancture decuir blanc, ſans aucun harnois de metal, & ung autre peignera ſa teſte, & ung autre mettra la coiffe, ung autre lui donnera le mantel de ſoye de Kyrtel de rouge tartarin, atachiez avec ung laz de ſoye blanc, avec une paire de gans blans, pandus aubout du las: mais le chandellier prendra pour ſon fies, tous les garnemens, avec tout l'arroy, & neceſſaires, en quoy l'eſcuier eſtoit attournez, & veſtuz, le jour qu'il entra en la court, pour prendre l'ordre, enſemble le lit, en qui il coucha premierement apres le baing, auſſi bien avec le Singleton, que des autres neceſſitez, pour leſquels fiefz le dit Chandelier trouvera a ſes deſpens la Coiffe, les gans, la ceinture, & le las: Et puis ce fait les ſaiges Chevaliers monteront a cheval, & admeneront l'eſcuier a la ſale, & les meneſtrelz, toujours devant faiſans leurs melodies: Mais ſoit le cheval habillie, comme il enſuit; il aura une ſelle couverte de cuir noir, les arczons de blanc fuſt & esqua-

esquartez, les eſtriviers noires, les fers dorez, le poitral de noir, avec une croix patee doree pendant pardevant le piz du cheval, & ſans croupiere, le frain de noir, a longues cerres a la gniſe de *Spaigne*, & une croix patee au front, & auſi ordonne ung jeune jouvenſel Eſcuier gentil, qui chevauchera devant l'Eſcuier, & il ſera dechaperonne, & portera l'eſpee de l'Eſcuier, avec les eſperons pendans ſur les eſchalles de l'eſpee, & ſoit l'eſpee a blanches eſchalles faictes de blanc cuir, & la ceinture de blanc cuir ſanz harnois, & le jouvencel tiendra l'eſpee par la poignee, & en ce point chevaucheront juſques a la ſale du Roy, & ſeront les Gouverneurs preſtz a leur meſtier, & les Saiges Chevaliers menants le dit Eſcuier, & quant il vient, par devant la ſale, les mareſchaulx, & hniſſiers ſe ſeront preſtz a l'encontre de l'Eſcuier, & lui diront, deſcendes, & lui deſcendu, le mareſchal prendra ſon Cheval pour fie ou C. *s.* & ſur ce, les Chevaliers admeneront l'Eſcuier en la ſale, juſques a la haulte table, & puis il ſera dreſciez au commencement de la table ſeconde, juſques a la venue du Roy, les Chevaliers de coſte luy, le jouvenſel a bout, l'eſpee eſtant pardevant luy, par entre les ditz deux Gouverneurs, & quant le Roy ſera venu a la ſale, & regardera l'Eſcuier preſt de prendre le hault ordre de dignite temporelle, il demandera l'eſpee, avecques les eſperons, & le Chamberlain prendra l'eſpee, & les eſperons du jouvencel, & les monſtrera au Roy, & ſur ce, le Roy prendra l'eſperon dextre, & le baillera au plus noble, & plus gentil, & lui dira, mettez ceſtui au talon de l'Eſcuier, & celuy ſera agenoille a l'un genoil, & prendra l'Eſcuier par la jambe dextre, & mettra ſon pied ſur ſon genoil, & fichera l'eſperon au talon dexrre de l'ecuier, & le Seigneur fera croix ſur le genoil de l'eſcuier, & lui baiſera, & ce fait, viendra ung autre Seigneur, qui fichera l'eſperon au talon ſeneſtre en meme maniere, & doncques le Roy, de ſa treſgrande courtoiſie, prendra l'eſpee, & la ceindra a l'eſcuier, & puis l'eſcuier leuera ſes bras en hault, les mains entretenans, & les gans entre les poux, & les doits ; & le Roy mettra ſes bras entour le col de l'eſcuier, & levera la * main dextre, & frapera ſur le col, & dira, ſoyes bon Chevalier, & puis le baiſera : Et adonques les ſaiges Chevaliers admeneront le nouvel Chevalier a la chapelle, a tres grande melodie, juſques au hault autel : & ylecques ſe age-

* *In my MS. it is*, Et puis de ſa main deſtre & de l'eſpee le frappera ſur le col.

nouillera,

nouillera, & mettra ſa dextre main deſſus l'autel, & fera promiſſe de ſouſtenir le droit de Sainte Egliſe, toute ſa vie, & adoncques ſoy meſme deceindra l'eſpee avec grande devocion, & prieres a Dieu, a Sainte Egliſe, & l'offreira, en priant a Dieu, & a tous ſes Saincts, qu'il puiſſe garder l'ordre, qu'il a prins juſques a la fin : & cet accompliz, il preindra une ſouppe de vin, & a l'iſſue de la chappelle, le maiſtre Queux du Roy ſera preſt de oſter les eſperons, & les prendra pour ſon fie ; & dira, je ſuis venu le maitre queux du Roy, & prens vos eſperons pour mon fie, & ſi vous faites choſes contre l'ordre de chevalerie, que Dieu ne veille, je coupperai vos eſperons de deſſus voz talons : & puis les chevaliers le remeneront en la ſale, & il commencera la table des Chevaliers, & ſeront aſſiz entour lui les Chevaliers : & il ſera ſerui, ſi comme les autres ; mais il ne mangera, ne ne beuvera a table, ne ne ſe mouvera, ne ne regardera, ne de ca ne dela, non plus, que une nouvelle mariee : & ce fait, ung de ces Gouverneurs aura ung cuerverchef en ſa main qu'il tiendra par devant le viſage, quant il ſera beſoing pour le craiſier ; & quant le Roy ſera leve hors de ſa table, & paſſe en ſa chambre, adoncque le nouvel Chevalier ſera mene a grant foiſon de Chevaliers, & Meneſtrelz, devant lui, juſques a ſa chambre ; & a l'entree, les Chevaliers, & Meneſtrelz prendront congie, & il yra a ſon diner, & les Chevaliers departiz, ſa chambre ſera fermee, & le nouvel Chevalier ſera deſpouille de ſes parcments, & ilz ſeront donnez aux Roys des Heraulx, ſe ils yſont preſens, ou ſi non, aux autres Heraulx, ſe ils ſont, autrement aux Meneſtrelz, avecque ung marc d'argent, ſe il eſt Bachelier, & ſe il eſt Baron, le double ; & ſe il eſt Conte, ou de plus, le double. Et le rouſſet cappe de nuit ſera donne au Guet, autrement ung noble, & adoncq il ſera reueſtu d'une robe de bleu, & les manches de cuſtote en guiſſe d'un preſtre ; & il aura a l'eſpaule ſeneſtre ung laz de blanche ſoye pendant, & ce blanc laz il portera ſur tous ſes habillemens, qu'il veſtira, au long de celle journee, tant qu'il ait gaignie honneur, & renom d'armes, & quil ſoit recorde de ſi hault record, comme de nobles Chevaliers, Eſcuiers, & Heraulx d'armes, & qu'il ſoit renomme de ſes faiz d'armes, comme devant eſt dit, ou aucun hault Prince, ou tres noble Dame de pouvoir couper le las de l'eſpaule du Chevalier, en diſant ; Sire, nous avons ouy tant de vray Renom de voſtre honneur, que vous avez fait en diverſes parties, au treſgrant honneur de Chevalerie, a vous meſmes, & a celluy

qui

qui vous a fait Chevalier, qne droit veult, que ceſt laz vous ſoit oſtez: Mais apres diſner les Chevaliers d'onneur & gentilz hommes viendront apres le Chevalier, & le admeneront en la preſence du Roy, & les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs par devant luy. Et le Chevalier dira: Tres noble & Redoubte Seir, de tout ce, que je puis, vous remercie de touts ces honneurs, courtoiſies, & bontez, que vous me avez, & vous en mercie. Et ce dit, il prendra congie du Roy: Et ſur ce les Eſcuiers Gouverneurs prendront congie de leur maiſtre en diſant, Sire, nous avons fait par le Commandement du Roy, ainſi comme nous feuſmes obligez, a noſtre pouvoir. Mais s'il eſt ainſi, que nous vous ayons deſpleu par negligence, ou par fait en ceſt temps, Nous vous requerons pardon, & d'autre part, Sire, comme vray droit eſt, ſelon les couſtumes de Court, & des Royaulmes anciens, Nous vous demandons Robes, & fiefz a terme de vie, comme Eſcuiers du Roy, Compaignons aux Bacheliers, & aux autres Seigneurs.

In a Copy in the Cott. Libr. Tib. *E.* 8. *p.* 86, *there follows this Paragraph.*

Et les regarderent honourablement par voy del fee ou autterment comme le man. eſte. Et adonqs apres les ditz novelx Chevaliers chivacherent apertement procheyn devant le Roy deſſuis le Barons & noblez del realme iſſint qil purront eſtir —— ou le Roy pleira, come ils ſoient faitz a le tour de *Loundres*, il chivacheront a *Weſtm.* Payleys, ou autrement feront procheyn devant le Roy tout le temps del tryumphe, qils ſont faitz Chevaliers.

F I N I S.